

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT**  
**Dated: April 17, 2018**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published ruling, and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

*The Bonds have been designated, or deemed designated, by the District as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.*

**\$6,890,000**  
**VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Grayson and Collin Counties, Texas)**  
**Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2018**

**Dated Date: April 15, 2018**

**Due: August 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The Van Alstyne Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1207") and an order (the "Bond Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted on March 19, 2018 by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Van Alstyne Independent School District (the "District"). As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval of a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the "Pricing Certificate") (the Pricing Certificate together with the Bond Order are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Pricing Certificate was executed by the Superintendent of the District on April 17, 2018, which completed the sale of the Bonds. The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined) which will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date shown above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing August 15, 2018, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment; provided, however, that so long as Cede & Co. (or other DTC nominee) is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments will be made as described under "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose" and "SCHEDULE I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").

The Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2028 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on February 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption").

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the Underwriter subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about May 17, 2018.*

**HilltopSecurities**

**\$6,890,000**  
**VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Grayson and Collin Counties, Texas)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
Base CUSIP No.: 920496 <sup>(1)</sup>

<b>Maturity Date 8/15</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Initial Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No. Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2018	\$55,000	2.00%	1.50%	SF4
2019	245,000	2.00	1.66	SG2
2020	260,000	2.00	1.78	SH0
2021	240,000	3.00	1.93	SJ6
2022	245,000	3.00	2.03	SK3
2023	260,000	4.00	2.16	SL1
2024	265,000	4.00	2.27	SM9
2025	280,000	4.00	2.37	SN7
2026	290,000	4.00	2.47	SP2
2027	300,000	4.00	2.57	SQ0
2028	315,000	4.00	2.65 <sup>(2)</sup>	SR8
2029	325,000	4.00	2.72 <sup>(2)</sup>	SS6
2030	300,000	4.00	2.75 <sup>(2)</sup>	ST4
2031	320,000	4.00	2.79 <sup>(2)</sup>	SU1
2032	325,000	4.00	2.84 <sup>(2)</sup>	SV9
2033	335,000	4.00	2.91 <sup>(2)</sup>	SW7
2034	1,255,000	4.00	2.95 <sup>(2)</sup>	SX5
2035	1,275,000	4.00	3.01 <sup>(2)</sup>	SY3

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, nor the Underwriter are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

<sup>(2)</sup> Yield calculated based on the assumption that the Bonds denoted and sold at a premium will be redeemed on February 15, 2028, the first optional call date for such Bonds, at a redemption price of par, plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

## VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Randall Morgan, President	2011	2020	Technology Management
Dennis Smith, Vice President	2012	2018	Human Resource Administrator
Debbie Nance, Secretary	2011	2020	Retired Educator
Jim Atchison, Member	2013	2019	Engineer
Kurt Himmelreich, Member	2010	2019	Real Estate
David Kerr, Member	2003	2018	Fire Investigator
Steve Roddy, Member	2009	2018	Law Enforcement

### APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with District</u>
Dr. David Brown	Superintendent	18 Years	5 Years
Renee Maples	Business Manager	20 Years	3 Years

### CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Morgan, Davis, & Company P.C., Greenville, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Dr. David Brown  
Superintendent  
Van Alstyne ISD  
549 Miller Lane  
Van Alstyne, Texas 75495  
(903) 482-8802

Brian Grubbs / Doug Whitt / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1470  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in the Official Statement pursuant to its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District, the Financial Advisor or the Underwriter. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE UNDERWRITER MAKE ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM DESCRIBED UNDER "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY AND THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING SCHEDULE I AND ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT .....	1	CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM .....	11
INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT .....	2	THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE VAN	
THE BONDS .....	2	ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT .....	13
Authorization and Purpose .....	2	THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM .....	13
Refunded Bonds .....	2	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS .....	25
General Description .....	2	DEBT LIMITATIONS .....	26
Optional Redemption .....	3	EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-	
Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices .....	3	EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....	26
Security .....	3	RATING .....	26
Permanent School Fund Guarantee .....	3	LEGAL MATTERS .....	27
Legality .....	3	TAX MATTERS .....	27
Payment Record .....	3	INVESTMENT POLICIES .....	29
Amendments .....	3	REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE	30
Defeasance .....	4	FINANCIAL ADVISOR .....	31
Sources and Uses of Funds .....	4	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC	
REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES .....	4	FUNDS IN TEXAS .....	31
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM .....	5	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION .....	31
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE .....	6	LITIGATION .....	32
AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES .....	7	FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS .....	32
THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT .....	9	UNDERWRITING .....	32
STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN		VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATION .....	33
TEXAS .....	10	CONCLUDING STATEMENT .....	33
Schedule of Refunded Bonds .....	Schedule I		
Financial Information of the District .....	Appendix A		
General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy .....	Appendix B		
Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel .....	Appendix C		
Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017 .....	Appendix D		

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without the entire Official Statement.

<b>The District</b>	The Van Alstyne Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Grayson and Collin Counties, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
<b>The Bonds</b>	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$6,890,000 pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended, ("Chapter 1207"), and an order adopted by the Board of Trustees on March 19, 2018 (the "Bond Order"). As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the "Pricing Certificate") (the Pricing Certificate and the Bond Order are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Pricing Certificate was executed by the Superintendent of the District on April 17, 2018, which completed the sale of the Bonds. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose" and "SCHEDULE I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
<b>Security</b>	The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security" and "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein).
<b>Optional Redemption</b>	The Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2028 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on February 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Optional Redemption").
<b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Rating</b>	The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (as defined herein) of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A2" by Moody's. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" and "RATING" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and Appendix C- "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" herein).
<b>Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations</b>	The District has designated the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions").
<b>Payment Record</b>	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
<b>Legal Opinion</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel.
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to be on or about May 17, 2018.

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Van Alstyne Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Grayson and Collin Counties, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds, the Order (as defined below) and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained by writing the Van Alstyne Independent School District, 549 Miller Lane, Van Alstyne, Texas 75495 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Final Official Statement pertaining to the Bonds will be deposited with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board through its Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA) system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" herein for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

## THE BONDS

### Authorization and Purpose

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$6,890,000 pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, including Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1207"), and an order adopted on March 19, 2018 (the "Bond Order") by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the "Pricing Certificate") (the Pricing Certificate and the Bond Order are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Pricing Certificate was executed by the Superintendent of the District on April 17, 2018, which completed the sale of the Bonds. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds (the "Refunded Bonds") for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").

### Refunded Bonds

The Order provides that from a portion of the proceeds of the sale of the Bonds to the Underwriter, the District will deposit with BOKF, N.A., Dallas, Texas, the escrow agent for the Refunded Bonds (the "Escrow Agent"), an amount, which will be sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds on August 15, 2018 (the "Redemption Date"). Such funds will be held by the Escrow Agent in an escrow account (the "Escrow Fund") and invested in U.S. Treasury securities ("Federal Securities") until the redemption date for the Refunded Bonds. Grant Thornton LLP, a nationally recognized accounting firm, will issue its report (the "Report") verifying at the time of delivery of the Bonds to the Underwriter the mathematical accuracy of the schedules that demonstrate the Federal Securities will mature and pay interest in such amounts which, together with uninvested funds in the Escrow Fund, will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds. Such maturing principal of and interest on the Federal Securities will not be available to pay the Bonds (see "VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS").

By the deposit of cash and Federal Securities with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the District will have effected the defeasance of the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the terms of Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, and the Order authorizing the issuance of the Refunded Bonds. It is the opinion of Bond Counsel that as a result of such deposit, and in reliance on the Report, the Refunded Bonds will be outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payments from the Federal Securities and cash held for such purpose by the Escrow Agent, and the Refunded Bonds will not be deemed as being outstanding obligations of the District, payable from the sources and secured in the manner provided in the orders authorizing their issuance or for any other purpose, and the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available in the Escrow Fund for the payment of the Refunded Bonds. Upon defeasance of the Refunded Bonds, the payment of the Refunded Bonds will no longer be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund of Texas.

### General Description

The Bonds are dated April 15, 2018 and will bear interest from the Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on the inside cover page of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable initially on August 15, 2018, and on each February 15 and August 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal amount or any integral multiple thereof within a stated maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's registration books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal and interest of the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for any payment due on any Bond shall be a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions in the city in which the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a day. The payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### **Optional Redemption**

The Bonds maturing on and after August 15, 2028 are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on February 15, 2028, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### **Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices**

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER RECEIVED BY THE BONDHOLDER, AND, SUBJECT TO PROVISION FOR PAYMENT OF THE REDEMPTION PRICE HAVING BEEN MADE AND THE SATISFACTION OF ANY OTHER CONDITION SPECIFIED IN THE NOTICE, INTEREST ON THE REDEEMED BONDS SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE FROM AND AFTER SUCH REDEMPTION DATE NOTWITHSTANDING THAT A BOND HAS NOT BEEN PRESENTED FOR PAYMENT.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Order have been met and money sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed has been received by the Paying Agent/Registrar prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice may state that said redemption is conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such money by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption or upon any prerequisite set forth in such notice of redemption. If a conditional notice of redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not fulfilled, such notice will be of no force and effect, the District will not redeem such Bonds, and the Paying Agent/Registrar will give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that such Bonds have not been redeemed.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

### **Security**

The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein).

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the State for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State and McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

In the Order, the District has reserved the right to amend the Order without the consent of any holder of the Bonds for the purpose of amending or supplementing the Order to (i) cure any ambiguity, defect or omission therein that does not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (ii) grant additional rights or security for the benefit of the holders, (iii) add events of default as shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of the Order that do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (iv) qualify the Order under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or corresponding provisions of federal laws from time to time in effect or (v) make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under the Order that are not inconsistent with the provisions thereof and which, in the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders.

The Order further provides that the holders of the Bonds in majority principal amount of the outstanding Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment not described above to the Order if it is deemed necessary or desirable by the

District; provided, however, that without the consent of 100% of the holders in principal amount of the then outstanding Bonds so affected, no amendment may be made for the purpose of: (i) making any change in the maturity of any of the outstanding Bonds; (ii) reducing the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Bonds; (iii) reducing the amount of the principal of outstanding Bonds; (iv) modifying the terms of payment of principal or interest on outstanding Bonds or imposing any condition with respect to such payment; or (v) changing the minimum percentage of the principal amount of the Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment. Reference is made to the Order for further provisions relating to the amendment thereof.

## Defeasance

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on the Bonds, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (whether such due date be by reason of maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with a paying agent or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money in an amount sufficient to make such payment and/or (2) Defeasance Securities, that will mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, and thereafter the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available to such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) for the payment of such defeased Bonds, including any insufficiency therein caused by the failure of such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) to receive payment when due on the Defeasance Securities. The District has additionally reserved the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Defeasance Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds. Current State law permits defeasance with the following types of securities: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, and (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the issuance of the refunding bonds are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent. There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners will be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used for defeasance purposes or that for any other Defeasance Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded as outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the District has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes

Defeasance of the Bonds cancels the Permanent School Fund guarantee with respect to such defeased Bonds.

## Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

### Sources

Par Amount of the Bonds	\$ 6,890,000.00
Net Original Issue Premium	584,036.25
Accrued Interest on the Bonds	23,071.11
<b>Total Sources of Funds</b>	<b>\$ 7,497,107.36</b>

### Uses

Deposit to Escrow Fund	\$ 7,335,339.37
Costs of Issuance	90,000.00
Deposit to interest and sinking fund	23,524.37
Underwriter's Discount	48,243.62
<b>Total Uses of Funds</b>	<b>\$ 7,497,107.36</b>

## REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES

The Order establishes specific events of default with respect to the Bonds and provides that if the District defaults in the payment of principal or interest on the Bonds when due, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the continuation thereof for a period of 60 days after notice of default is given by the District by any registered owner, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order covenants and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in



Tooke v. City of Mexia, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. As a result, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors, by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion and by governmental immunity.

### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Underwriter believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

The District and the Underwriter cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

DTC, New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has an S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's MMI Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the

District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, Bond certificates will be printed and delivered to holders.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from DTC and the District and the Underwriter believe such information to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor nor the Underwriter take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

#### **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

#### **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

#### **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion or exchange, during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date.

## **Replacement Bonds**

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

### **Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District**

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Grayson Central Appraisal District and Collin Central Appraisal District (collectively, the "Appraisal District") are responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District is subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

### **Property Subject to Taxation by the District**

Except for certain exemptions provided by State law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the District is subject to taxation by the District. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the District) include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the District has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a nonprofit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university; and designated historic sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income; solar and windpowered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; \$10,000 State mandated exemption to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over or disabled; a State mandated exemption up to a maximum of \$12,000 for real or personal property of disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of an individual who died while on active duty in the armed forces; a State mandated \$25,000 in market value exemption for all residential homesteads (see "Residential Homestead Exemptions" below); and certain classes of intangible property. The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. In addition, except for increases attributable to certain improvements, the District is prohibited by State law from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such residence qualified for an exemption based on the age or disability of the owner. The freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, a surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was 55 or older when the deceased spouse died and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. Pursuant to a constitutional amendment approved by the voters on May 12, 2007, legislation was enacted to reduce the school property tax limitation imposed by the freeze on taxes paid on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" herein). The school property tax limitation provided by the constitutional amendment and enabling legislation apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value. Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit", defined by the Tax Code as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year, after holding a public hearing, to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport or goods-in-transit exemptions for tangible personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82<sup>nd</sup> Texas Legislature, 1<sup>st</sup> Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action prior to January 1 of the first tax years in which the governing body proposes to tax good-in-transit to continue its taxation of good-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. See "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" and "APPENDIX A – FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT - ASSESSED VALUATION" for a schedule of the amount of exemptions granted by the District.

A city or county may create a tax increment financing zone ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city or county to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Prior to September 1, 2001, school districts were allowed to enter into tax abatement agreements to encourage economic development. Under such agreements, a property owner agrees to construct certain improvements on its property. The school district in turn agrees not to levy a tax on all or part of the increased value attributable to the improvements until the expiration of the agreement. The abatement agreement could last for a period of up to 10 years. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for

(1) the appraisal value, in excess of the “frozen” value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the city creating the TIF gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999) or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for certain school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district’s rollback tax rate (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate”).

### **Valuation of Property for Taxation**

Generally, property in the District must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the District in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property’s value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount that would not exceed the lesser of (1) the property’s market value in the most recent tax year in which the market value was determined by the appraisal district or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the property’s appraised value in the preceding tax year, plus (b) the property’s appraised value the preceding tax year, plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. State law further requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be assessed solely on the property’s value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property.

Article VII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permit land designated for agricultural use, open space or timberland to be appraised at its value based on the land’s capacity to produce agricultural or timber products rather than at its fair market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant’s right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the District can collect taxes for previous years based on the new value, including three years for agricultural use and five years for agricultural open-space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three years. The District, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District current estimates of appraised values within the District or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the District. While such current estimates of appraisal values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the District, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the District until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal rolls.

### **Residential Homestead Exemptions**

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual’s spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

Section 11.131 of the Texas Tax Code states that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran’s residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until the surviving spouse remarries.

In addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created. Voters in the State approved a constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increasing the mandatory homestead exemption for school districts from \$15,000 to \$25,000,

and requiring that the tax limitation for taxpayers who are age 65 and older or disabled be reduced to reflect the additional exemption. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM"

The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) during the period ending December 31, 2019.

### **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

### **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30th or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the District, the rate of taxation must be set by the Board based upon the valuation of property within the District as of the preceding January 1 and the amount required to be raised for debt service and maintenance and operations purposes. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and accrues interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may under certain circumstances be imposed by the District. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances.

### **Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate**

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted an M&O tax rate that was less than its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

### **District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien for unpaid taxes upon real property, which lien is discharged upon payment. On January 1 of each year, such tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with the tax liens of other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property taxes takes priority over the claims of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. The automatic stay in bankruptcy will prevent the automatic attachment of tax liens with respect to post-petition tax years unless relief is sought and granted by the bankruptcy judge. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

Except with respect to taxpayers who are 65 years of age or older, at any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights, or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts.

### **THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in Grayson and Collin Counties. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within Grayson and Collin Counties.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the Grayson Central Appraisal District.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does not grant any portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has granted the freeport exemption. The District has not taken action to tax goods-in-transit.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Penalty</u>	<u>Cumulative Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7	2	9
April	8	3	11
May	9	4	13
June	10	5	15
July	12	6	18

*After July, the penalty remains at 12%, and interest increases at the rate of 1% each month. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, an amount up to 20% attorney's collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.*

## **STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS**

### **Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System**

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal., 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("Morath"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### **Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds**

The Court's decision in Morath upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Financing System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the Morath decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the "Foundation School Program", as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited M&O tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

### Local Funding for School Districts

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the "Reform Legislation"), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to "compress" its tax rate by an amount equal to the "State Compression Percentage". The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate"). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein).

### State Funding for School Districts

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a "Basic Allotment") for each student in average daily attendance ("ADA"). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as "Tier One" of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then "enriched" with additional funds known as "Tier Two" of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment,

create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

## **2006 Legislation**

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

## **2017 Legislation**

The 85th Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85th Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.



## Wealth Transfer Provisions

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise, Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain measures in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

### THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

The District's wealth per student for the 2017-18 school year is less than the equalized wealth value. Accordingly, the District has not been required to exercise one of the permitted wealth equalization options. As a district with wealth per student less than the equalized wealth value, the District may benefit in the future by agreeing to accept taxable property or funding assistance from or agreeing to consolidate with a property-rich district to enable such district to reduce its wealth per student to the permitted level.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should continue to exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

### THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriter.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

### History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its

submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2017 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$212.49 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,056.4 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, when filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the

rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of 2006, 2008, 2010, 2012, 2014 and 2016. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, emerging and international equities at 17% and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2017, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 43.16% in public market equity investments; 12.86% in fixed income investments; 9.99% in absolute return assets; 7.02% in private equity assets; 7.40% in real estate assets; 6.83% in risk parity assets; 5.44% in real return assets; 6.99% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual payout from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has

resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

### **Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program**

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then

outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback a portion of the multiplier increase. The regulatory change effecting the rollback will be effective 20 days after filing as adopted with the Texas Register, which is expected to make the change effective in late-March 2018. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2017, the State Law Capacity increased from \$97,933,360,905 on August 31, 2016 to \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017.

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a

school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of February 28, 2018, there were 181 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 719 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, five of such campuses' operations have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment

charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of August 31, 2017, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 66.57% of the State Capacity Limit for the Guarantee Program. SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.5% in February 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 56%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017, the SBOE voted to authorize the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal year 2018, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for that fiscal year.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times



market value to 3.50 times (to ensure compliance with State administrative law requirements, the rollback is expected to be effective in late March 2018).

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBG Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBG Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of August 31, 2017, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.23% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but in September 2017, the SBOE authorized the PSF staff to begin the process of transferring the management of the Reserve Fund to the PSF, where it is expected to be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff. A target date in Spring 2018 has been established for that change in management of the Reserve Fund to become effective.

#### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At January 31, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$4,729,390.

#### **Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF**

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter



schools along the Texas Gulf Coast. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. In early October, the TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance for the remainder of fiscal year 2018. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts), and the damage caused by Harvey could be well in excess of previous storm damage. TEA conducted a survey of districts affected by the hurricane with respect to the collection of fiscal year 2017 taxes. In general, tax revenues of affected districts appear to have increased for fiscal 2017, but at a somewhat lower rate than had been anticipated. It should be noted that most of the fiscal year 2017 taxes had been collected when the hurricane hit the Texas coast in late August. TEA has not conducted any surveys with respect to fiscal year 2018 taxes, but notes that as of late February 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Most school district and charter district bonds that are guaranteed by the PSF are fixed rate bonds that pay principal on an annual basis and interest on a semiannual basis, in February and August of each year. The hurricane hit the Texas coast after the August 2017 payment dates, so the first payment cycle that could have been affected by the storm was the February 2018 payment date. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

#### Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

#### Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

##### Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Market Value <sup>(1)</sup>
2013	\$25,599,296,902	\$33,163,242,374
2014	27,596,692,541	38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017 <sup>(2)</sup>	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2017, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$247.64 million, \$2,797.05 million, \$4.71 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$651.40 million, \$2,788.02 million, \$2.09 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively. At January 31, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$32,415,438,326 and a market value of \$43,741,388,620. January 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

##### Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup>
2013	\$55,218,889,156
2014	58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2017 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$117,195,729,512, of which \$42,929,639,489 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2017, there were \$74,266,090,023 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program and based on the cost value of the Fund at August 31, 2017 the capacity of

the Guarantee Program at that date was \$111,568,711,072. The Program capacity at August 31, 2017 takes into account the increases in the cost value multiplier effective February 1, 2016 and March 1, 2017, which cumulatively increased the multiplier from 3 times to 3.50 times, but does not take into account the September 1, 2017 increase in the multiplier to 3.75. Using the IRS Limit, which is the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity, of \$117,318,653,038, at August 31, 2017 98.28% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.72% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category <sup>(1)</sup>						
School District Bonds			Charter District Bonds			Totals
Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
2014 <sup>(2)</sup>	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017 <sup>(3)</sup>	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

<sup>(3)</sup> At January 31, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$76,112,811,568 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,354 school district issues, aggregating \$74,700,936,568 in principal amount and 43 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,411,875,000 in principal amount. At January 31, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$2,013,789,828 (based on the then effective capacity multiplier of 3.75 times and on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

#### Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year, and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

### **2011 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3% and 3.5% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015 and 2016-2017, respectively. In September 2017, the SBOE approved a \$2.5 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2018-2019, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$102.99 million, which represents a 3.7% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$248.58, based on 2017 preliminary student average daily attendance of 4,971,656.277.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in July 2016. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund. A report of the State Auditor released in March 2016 noted that based on an audit of certain real estate transactions managed by the GLO, during the period from September 2009 to May 2015, the GLO failed to comply with certain of such legal requirements relating to conflict of interest reporting, complying with written procedures and maintenance of documentation and other statutory and procedural requirements. That report, which includes the response of GLO management agreeing to the recommendations of the report, is available at <http://www.sao.texas.gov/reports/main/16-018.pdf>.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.0 million and \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2014 and 2015, respectively, and \$30.2 million for each of the fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_State\\_ment\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_State_ment_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 19, 2010, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <http://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/NonCUSIP9IssueDetails.aspx?id=ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Material Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar

event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

#### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

#### **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

#### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

#### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

#### **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the next succeeding paragraph. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on May 12, 2007 under Chapter 20, Texas Education Code (now codified as Section 45.003, Texas Education Code).

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50 and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts". Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate".

Pursuant to a tax rate referendum election held by the District on November 4, 2008 and passed by a majority of the participating voters, the District increased its maintenance tax rate to \$1.12 per \$100 in assessed valuation.

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduces the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues that are subject to the tax rate test. The Bonds are refunding bonds and are not subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. In connection with prior bond issues, the District has not used projected property values to satisfy this threshold test but has used approximately \$500,000 of Tier One funds in demonstrating compliance with the \$0.50 threshold debt service test.

#### **DEBT LIMITATIONS**

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay new debt secured by the district's debt service tax from a tax rate of \$0.50, and to pay all debt and operating expenses which must be paid from receipts of the district's maintenance tax from a tax not to exceed the maintenance tax limit described under the caption "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS." In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments, and, effective September 1, 1997, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving State assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund of the bond the amount of state assistance received or to be received in that year. The State Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt.

#### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State of Texas. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District generally does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see Other Information – "Note M. Defined Benefit Pension Plan" in the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

In addition to its participation in the TRS, the District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (the "TRS-Care Retired Plan"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan. The TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the TRS. Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. For more detailed information concerning the District's funding policy and contributions in connection with the TRS-Care Retired Plan, see "Note N. School District Retiree Health Plan (TRS-Care)" in the Financial Statements.

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed \$266 per month per employee to the Health Care Plan. Employees, at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. See "Note 15. Risk Management – Claims and Judgments - Health Care Coverage" of the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

#### **RATING**

The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's current unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A2" by Moody's. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM– Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" herein).

An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from Moody's. The rating of the Bonds by Moody's reflect only the views of said company at the time the rating is given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by Moody's, if, in the judgment of Moody's, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the ratings, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas who will deliver its opinion to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas. The legal fee to be paid to counsel to the Underwriter for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale of the delivery of the Bonds.

Though it represents the Financial Advisor and the Underwriter from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in the issuance of the Bonds. McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. also advises the TEA in connection with its disclosure obligations under the Federal securities laws, but such firm has not passed upon any TEA disclosures contained in this Official Statement. Except as noted below, Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part in the preparation of this Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein except that in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information appearing under the captions or subcaptions "THE BONDS" (except under the subcaptions "Permanent School Fund Guarantee", "Payment Record", "Sources and Uses of Funds", and the third paragraph under "Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices", as to which no opinion will be expressed), "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM", "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" (first paragraph only), "LEGAL MATTERS" (except for the last two sentences of the first paragraph thereunder), "TAX MATTERS", "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS", "REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except under the subcaption "Compliance with Prior Undertakings," as to which no opinion will be expressed) and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the Order contained under such captions is a fair and accurate summary of the information purported to be shown and that the information and descriptions contained under such captions relating to the provisions of applicable state and federal laws are correct as to matters of law.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## **TAX MATTERS**

### **Opinion**

On the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District, will render its opinion that, in accordance with statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof ("Existing Law"), (1) interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes will be excludable from the "gross income" of the holders thereof and (2) the Bonds will not be treated as "specified private activity bonds" the interest on which would be included as an alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Except as stated above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. See Appendix C -- Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.

In rendering its opinion, Bond Counsel will rely upon (a) certain information and representations of the District, including information and representations contained in the District's federal tax certificate (b) covenants of the District contained in the Bond documents relating to certain matters, including arbitrage and the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the Refunded Bonds and the property financed or refinanced therewith, (c) the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund and (d) the Escrow Verification report. Failure by the District to observe the aforementioned representations or covenants could cause the interest on the Bonds to become taxable retroactively to the date of issuance.

The Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder contain a number of requirements that must be satisfied subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds in order for interest on the Bonds to be, and to remain, excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Failure to comply with such requirements may cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel is conditioned on compliance by the District with such requirements, and Bond Counsel has not been retained to monitor compliance with these requirements subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the reliance on the aforementioned information, representations and covenants. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result. Existing Law is subject to change by the Congress and to subsequent judicial and administrative interpretation by the courts and the Department of the Treasury. There can be no assurance that Existing Law or the interpretation thereof will not be changed in a manner which would adversely affect the tax treatment of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds.

A ruling was not sought from the Internal Revenue Service by the District with respect to the Bonds or the property financed or refinanced with proceeds of the Bonds or the Refunded Bonds. No assurances can be given as to whether the Internal Revenue Service will commence an audit of the Bonds, or as to whether the Internal Revenue Service would agree with the opinion of Bond Counsel. If an Internal Revenue Service audit is commenced, under current procedures the Internal Revenue Service is likely to treat the District as the taxpayer and the Bondholders may have no right to participate in such procedure. No additional interest will be paid upon any determination of taxability.

## **Federal Income Tax Accounting Treatment of Original Issue Discount**

The initial public offering price to be paid for one or more maturities of the Bonds may be less than the maturity amount thereof or one or more periods for the payment of interest on the Bonds may not be equal to the accrual period or be in excess of one year (the "Original Issue Discount Bonds"). In such event, the difference between (i) the "stated redemption price at maturity" of each Original Issue Discount Bond, and (ii) the initial offering price to the public of such Original Issue Discount Bond would constitute original issue discount. The "stated redemption price at maturity" means the sum of all payments to be made on the Bonds less the amount of all periodic interest payments. Periodic interest payments are payments which are made during equal accrual periods (or during any unequal period if it is the initial or final period) and which are made during accrual periods which do not exceed one year.

Under Existing Law, any owner who has purchased such Original Issue Discount Bond in the initial public offering is entitled to exclude from gross income (as defined in section 61 of the Code) an amount of income with respect to such Original Issue Discount Bond equal to that portion of the amount of such original issue discount allocable to the accrual period. For a discussion of certain collateral federal tax consequences, see the discussion set forth below.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bond prior to stated maturity, however, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Original Issue Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Original Issue Discount Bond was held by such initial owner) is includable in gross income.

Under Existing Law, the original issue discount on each Original Issue Discount Bond is accrued daily to the stated maturity thereof (in amounts calculated as described below for each six-month period ending on the date before the semiannual anniversary dates of the date of the Bonds and ratably within each such six-month period) and the accrued amount is added to an initial owner's basis for such Original Issue Discount Bond for purposes of determining the amount of gain or loss recognized by such owner upon the redemption, sale or other disposition thereof. The amount to be added to basis for each accrual period is equal to (a) the sum of the issue price and the amount of original issue discount accrued in prior periods multiplied by the yield to stated maturity (determined on the basis of compounding at the close of each accrual period and properly adjusted for the length of the accrual period) less (b) the amounts payable as current interest during such accrual period on such Original Issue Discount Bond.

The federal income tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of Original Issue Discount Bonds which are not purchased in the initial offering at the initial offering price may be determined according to rules which differ from those described above. All owners of Original Issue Discount Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal, state and local income tax purposes of the treatment of interest accrued upon redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds and with respect to the federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds.

### **Collateral Federal Income Tax Consequences**

The following discussion is a summary of certain collateral federal income tax consequences resulting from the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. This discussion is based on existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions, all of which are subject to change or modification, retroactively.

The following discussion is applicable to investors, other than those who are subject to special provisions of the Code, such as financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals allowed an earned income credit, certain S corporations with accumulated earnings and profits and excess passive investment income, foreign corporations subject to the branch profits tax, taxpayers qualifying for the health insurance premium assistance credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase tax-exempt obligations.

THE DISCUSSION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE EXHAUSTIVE. INVESTORS, INCLUDING THOSE WHO ARE SUBJECT TO SPECIAL PROVISIONS OF THE CODE, SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS AS TO THE TAX TREATMENT WHICH MAY BE ANTICIPATED TO RESULT FROM THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS BEFORE DETERMINING WHETHER TO PURCHASE THE BONDS.

Under section 6012 of the Code, holders of tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds, may be required to disclose interest received or accrued during each taxable year on their returns of federal income taxation.

Section 1276 of the Code provides for ordinary income tax treatment of gain recognized upon the disposition of a tax-exempt obligation, such as the Bonds, if such obligation was acquired at a "market discount" and if the fixed maturity of such obligation is equal to, or exceeds, one year from the date of issue. Such treatment applies to "market discount bonds" to the extent such gain does not exceed the accrued market discount of such bonds; although for this purpose, a de minimis amount of market discount is ignored. A "market discount bond" is one which is acquired by the holder at a purchase price which is less than the stated redemption price at maturity or, in the case of a bond issued at an original issue discount, the "revised issue price" (i.e., the issue price plus accrued original issue discount). The "accrued market discount" is the amount which bears the same ratio to the market discount as the number of days during which the holder holds the obligation bears to the number of days between the acquisition date and the final maturity date.

### **Future and Proposed Legislation**

Tax legislation, administrative actions taken by tax authorities, or court decisions, whether at the Federal or state level, may adversely affect the tax-exempt status of interest on the Bonds under Federal or state law and could affect the market price or marketability of the Bonds. Any such proposal could limit the value of certain deductions and exclusions, including the exclusion for tax-exempt interest. The likelihood of any such proposal being enacted cannot be predicted. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the foregoing matters.

### **State, Local and Foreign Taxes**

Investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the tax implications of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds under applicable state or local laws. Foreign investors should also consult their own tax advisors regarding the tax consequences unique to investors who are not United States persons.

### **Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

Subject to certain exceptions, information reports describing interest income, including original issue discount, with respect to the Bonds will be sent to each registered holder and to the Internal Revenue Service. Payments of interest and principal may be



subject to backup withholding under section 3406 of the Code if a recipient of the payments fails to furnish to the payor such owner's social security number or other taxpayer identification number ("TIN"), furnishes an incorrect TIN, or otherwise fails to establish an exemption from the backup withholding tax. Any amounts so withheld would be allowed as a credit against the recipient's federal income tax. Special rules apply to partnerships, estates and trusts, and in certain circumstances, and in respect of Non-U.S. Holders, certifications as to foreign status and other matters may be required to be provided by partners and beneficiaries thereof.

### **Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions**

Section 265(a) of the Code provides, in pertinent part, that interest paid or incurred by a taxpayer, including a "financial institution," on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible in determining the taxpayer's taxable income. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exception to the disallowance of such deduction for any interest expense paid or incurred on indebtedness of a taxpayer that is a "financial institution" allocable to tax-exempt obligations, other than "private activity bonds," that are designated by a "qualified small issuer" as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." A "qualified small issuer" is any governmental issuer (together with any "on behalf of" and "subordinate" issuers) who issues no more than \$10,000,000 of tax-exempt obligations during the calendar year. Section 265(b)(5) of the Code defines the term "financial institution" as any "bank" described in Section 585(a)(2) of the Code, or any person accepting deposits from the public in the ordinary course of such person's trade or business that is subject to federal or state supervision as a financial institution. Notwithstanding the exception to the disallowance of the deduction of interest on indebtedness related to "qualified tax-exempt obligations" provided by Section 265(b) of the Code, Section 291 of the Code provides that the allowable deduction to a "bank," as defined in Section 585(a)(2) of the Code, for interest on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase "qualified tax-exempt obligations" shall be reduced by twenty-percent (20%) as a "financial institution preference item."

The District has designated the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" within the meaning of section 265(b) of the Code. In furtherance of that designation, the District has covenanted to take such action that would assure, or to refrain from such action that would adversely affect, the treatment of the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." Potential purchasers should be aware that if the issue price to the public exceeds \$10,000,000, there is a reasonable basis to conclude that the payment of a de minimis amount of premium in excess of \$10,000,000 is disregarded; however, the Internal Revenue Service could take a contrary view. If the Internal Revenue Service takes the position that the amount of such premium is not disregarded, then such obligations might fail to satisfy the aforementioned dollar limitation and the Bonds would not be "qualified tax-exempt obligations."

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

### **Investments**

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

### **Legal Investments**

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities, (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent, (6) certificates of deposit and share certificates (i) that are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch office in Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits; or (ii) where: (a) the funds are invested by the District through a depository institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and that is selected by the District; (b) the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; (d) the depository institution acts as a custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; and (e) at the same time that the certificates of deposit are issued, the depository institution selected by the District receives deposits from customers of other federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, that is equal to or greater than the funds invested by the District through the depository institution selected under clause (ii)(a) above (7) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are fully secured by obligations described in clause (1) and require the security being purchased by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, (8) bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency, (9) commercial paper with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank, (10) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that have a dollar weighted average portfolio maturity of 90 days or less and include in their investment objectives the maintenance of a stable net asset value of \$1 for each share, (11) no-load mutual funds registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that: have an average weighted maturity of less than two years; invest exclusively in obligations described in the preceding clauses and clause (12); conform to the requirements relating to the eligibility of investment pools to receive and invest funds, and are continuously rated as to investment quality by at least one nationally recognized investment rating firm of not less than AAA or its equivalent, (12) public funds investment pools that have an advisory board which includes participants in the pool and are continuously rated as to investment quality by at least one nationally recognized investment rating firm of not less than AAA or its equivalent or no lower than investment grade with a weighted average maturity no greater than 90 days, and (13) obligations issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel. Texas law also permits the District to invest bond proceeds in a guaranteed investment contract subject to the limitations set forth in Chapter 2256, as amended, Texas Government Code.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (13) above, (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (13) above, clause (9) above and clauses (10) and (11) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under

a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

### **Investment Policies**

Under Texas law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District, the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups, methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the Public Funds Investment Act. As an integral part of its investment policy, the District is required to adopt a separate written investment strategy for each of the funds under its control. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under Texas law, District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, the ending market value and the fully accrued interest during the reporting period of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) state law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board of Trustees.

### **Additional Provisions**

Under Texas law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the District to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board of Trustees; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in non-money market mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

### **Current Investments**

As of February 28, 2018, the District had approximately \$22,783,029 (unaudited) at the local depository bank. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities; i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, nor has the United States Securities and Exchange Commission passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

## **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

## **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

## **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually and timely notice of specified events to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB"). The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" for a description of the TEA's continuing disclosure undertaking to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually with respect to the Permanent School Fund and the State, as the case may be, and to provide timely notice of certain specified events related to the guarantee, to the MSRB.

### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions an audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within 12 months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2018. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within 12 months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such 12-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule").

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of February in each year, and the Financial Statements must be provided by August 31 of each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Event Notices**

The District will also provide notices of certain events to the MSRB. The District will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner and not more than 10 business days after occurrence of the event: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material. For these purposes, any event described in the immediately preceding clause (12) is considered to occur when any of the following occur:

the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District. Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee) or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

### **Availability of Information**

All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if (i) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (ii) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent to the amendment or (b) any person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the registered owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District so amends the agreement, it has agreed to include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information and operating data so provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with SEC Rule 15c2-12.

## **LITIGATION**

In the opinion of District officials, except as described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition or operations of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Underwriter with a certificate to the effect that except as disclosed in the Official Statement, no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale or delivery of the Bonds.

## **FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

## **UNDERWRITING**

The Underwriter has agreed, subject to certain customary conditions, to purchase the Bonds at a price equal to the initial offering prices to the public, as shown on the inside cover page hereof, less an Underwriter's discount of \$48,243.62 plus accrued interest from the Dated Date to the date of initial delivery. The Underwriter obligations are subject to certain conditions precedent, and the Underwriter will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds, if any Bonds are purchased. The Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers and others at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriter.

The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in this Official Statement pursuant to their respective responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

#### **VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS**

Grant Thornton LLP, a firm of independent certified public accountants, will deliver to the Issuer, on or before the settlement date of the Bonds, its verification report indicating that it has verified, in accordance with the Statement on Standards for Consulting Services established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the mathematical accuracy of (a) the mathematical computations of the adequacy of the cash and the maturing principal of and interest on the Federal Securities, to pay, when due or upon early redemption, the principal of, interest on and related call premium requirements, if any, of the Refunded Bonds and (b) the mathematical computations of yield used by Bond Counsel to support its opinion that interest on the Bonds will be excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

Grant Thornton relied on the accuracy, completeness and reliability of all information provided to it by, and on all decisions and approvals of, the Issuer. In addition, Grant Thornton has relied on any information provided to it by the Issuer's retained advisors, consultants or legal counsel. Grant Thornton was not engaged to perform audit or attest services under AICPA auditing or attestation standards or to provide any form of attest report or opinion under such standards in conjunction with this engagement.

#### **CONCLUDING STATEMENT**

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer of solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

The Bond Order authorized the Pricing Officer to approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Underwriter. This Official Statement has been approved by the Pricing Officer of the District for distribution in accordance with the provisions of Rule 15c2-12.

/s/ Dr. David Brown

---

Pricing Officer

(this page intentionally left blank)

**VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Schedule I - Schedule of Refunded Bonds**

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2008**

<b>Maturities Being Redeemed</b>	<b>Original CUSIP</b>	<b>Principal Amount Outstanding</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Principal Amount Being Refunded</b>	<b>Call Date</b>	<b>Principal Amount Unrefunded</b>
8/15/2019	920496JX5	\$ 225,000.00	5.500%	\$ 225,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2020	920496JY3	235,000.00	4.000%	235,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2021	920496JZ0	245,000.00	4.000%	245,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2022	920496KA3	255,000.00	4.000%	255,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2023	920496KB1	270,000.00	4.000%	270,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2024	920496KC9	280,000.00	4.000%	280,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2025	920496KD7	290,000.00	4.000%	290,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2026		300,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	4.000%	300,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2027	920496KF2	310,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	4.000%	310,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2028	920496KG0	325,000.00	4.000%	325,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2029		340,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	4.000%	340,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2030		350,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	4.000%	350,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2031	920496KK1	370,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	4.000%	370,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2032		380,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	4.000%	380,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2033	920496KM7	395,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	4.000%	395,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2034	920496KN5	1,315,000.00	4.000%	1,315,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
8/15/2035	920496KP0	1,335,000.00	4.000%	1,335,000.00	August 15, 2018	-
		<u>\$ 7,220,000.00</u>		<u>\$ 7,220,000.00</u>		<u>\$ -</u>

(1) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$610,000 that matures August 15, 2027.

(2) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$1,060,000 that matures August 15, 2031.

(3) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$775,000 that matures August 15, 2033.

(this page intentionally left blank)



**APPENDIX A**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**

(this page intentionally left blank)

# VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## Financial Information

### ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>

2017/18 Total Valuation.....		\$ 998,227,850
Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$ 49,808,785	
State Over-65 Exemption	7,314,376	
Disabled Homestead Exemption Loss	3,553,834	
Veterans Exemption Loss	701,908	
Freeport Exemption	1,125,898	
Pollution Exemption	6,109	
Productivity Loss	289,649,540	
Solar/Wind Exemption	44,669	
Homestead Cap Loss	30,890,858	
	\$ 383,095,977	
2017/18 Net Taxable Valuation .....		\$ 615,131,873

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 election increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(2) Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled \$37,186,728 for 2017/18.

### VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding	\$ 58,385,000
Less: The Refunded Bonds	(7,220,000)
Plus: The Bonds	6,890,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds	58,055,000
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2017) <sup>(1)</sup>	(30,309)
Net General Obligation Debt	\$ 58,024,691
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(2)</sup>	9.43%
2018 Population Estimate	7,801
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$78,853
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$7,438

(1) Source: Van Alstyne ISD Audited Financial Statement.

(2) The ratio of Net Obligations to Net Taxable Valuation above does not include a portion of the District's outstanding debt service that is payable from any debt subsidies that may be provided by the State of Texas. The District expects to receive state funding assistance for voted bond debt service equal to approximately 3% of its debt service requirements for its unlimited tax debt service for the 2017/18 fiscal year. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's obligations.

### PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(1)</sup>	Tax Rate	% Collections <sup>(3)</sup>	
			Current <sup>(4)</sup>	Total <sup>(4)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 334,874,427	\$ 1.6900 <sup>(5)</sup>	96.68%	99.83%
2007/08	364,678,303	1.3500 <sup>(5)</sup>	96.87%	100.81%
2008/09	398,772,456	1.5200	96.88%	99.15%
2009/10	420,318,774	1.5200	96.82%	99.71%
2010/11	426,207,026	1.5200	97.28%	100.21%
2011/12	426,978,800	1.5200	97.49%	100.15%
2012/13	421,926,523	1.5200	97.95%	100.10%
2013/14	473,948,423	1.5200	97.98%	99.61%
2014/15	514,314,003	1.5200	98.49%	100.34%
2015/16	538,951,095 <sup>(2)</sup>	1.5200	98.71%	100.15%
2016/17	581,461,161 <sup>(2)</sup>	1.5200	98.44%	99.47%
2017/18	615,131,873 <sup>(2)</sup>	1.6200	(In Process of Collection)	

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 election increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(3) Source: Van Alstyne ISD Audited Financial Statements.

(4) Excludes penalties and interest.

(5) The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.1200	\$1.1200	\$1.1200	\$1.1200	\$1.1200
Debt Service	\$0.4000	\$0.4000	\$0.4000	\$0.4000	\$0.5000
Total Tax Rate	\$1.5200	\$1.5200	\$1.5200	\$1.5200	\$1.6200

(1) On November 4, 2008, the District successfully held a tax ratification election.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>	Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(2)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 334,874,427	\$ 22,345,000	6.67%
2007/08	364,678,303	35,311,519	9.68%
2008/09	398,772,456	34,876,519	8.75%
2009/10	420,318,774	34,161,519	8.13%
2010/11	426,207,026	33,529,197	7.87%
2011/12	426,978,800	32,647,524	7.65%
2012/13	421,926,523	31,918,488	7.56%
2013/14	473,948,423	31,320,000	6.61%
2014/15	514,314,003	36,985,000	7.19%
2015/16	538,951,095	35,685,000	6.62%
2016/17	581,461,161	48,920,000	8.41%
2017/18	615,131,873	56,340,000 <sup>(3)</sup>	9.16%

(1) At fiscal year end.

(2) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information.

(3) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Collin County	\$ 301,610,000	0.03%	\$ 90,483
Collin County CCD	258,050,000	0.03%	77,415
Grayson County	-	5.63%	-
Grayson County JCD	29,495,000	5.63%	1,660,569
Van Alstyne, City of	1,812,000	100.00%	1,812,000
Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup>			\$ 3,640,467
Van Alstyne Independent School District <sup>(2)</sup>			58,024,691
Total Direct & Overlapping Debt			<u>\$ 61,665,157.50</u>
Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation		10.02%	
Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt		\$7,905	

(1) Equals gross debt less self-supporting debt.

(2) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds. Excludes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS <sup>(1)</sup>****2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Energy Transfer Fuel LP	Pipeline	\$ 7,481,637	1.22%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	4,887,408	0.79%
Grayson-Collin Electric Coop	Electric Utility	4,723,616	0.77%
Techline Inc.	Utility Supply	3,755,705	0.61%
Foxworth Gailbraith Lumber Co.	Lumber	3,675,384	0.60%
Five Oaks Holding LLC	Electric Utility	2,977,288	0.48%
Grayson Collin Communications	Communication	2,682,317	0.44%
Enterprise Texas Pipeline LLC	Pipeline	2,654,850	0.43%
Lacore Enterprises LLC	Sales and Distribution	2,344,550	0.38%
TXU Business Services	Electric Utility	2,119,935	0.34%
		<u>\$ 37,302,690</u>	<u>6.06%</u>

**2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Caterpillar Global <sup>(2)</sup>	Industrial Machinery	\$ 34,176,594	5.88%
Energy Transfer Fuel LP	Pipeline	8,832,364	1.52%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	5,030,500	0.87%
Grayson-Collin Electric Coop	Electric Utility	4,697,245	0.81%
Techline Inc.	Utility Supply	3,755,985	0.65%
Foxworth Gailbraith Lumber Co.	Lumber	2,848,445	0.49%
TXU Business Services	Electric Utility	2,735,115	0.47%
Enterprise Texas Pipeline LLC	Pipeline	2,722,594	0.47%
JTW Realty Texas LLC	Real Estate	2,369,887	0.41%
EnterHealth LLC	Healthcare	1,707,612	0.29%
		<u>\$ 68,876,341</u>	<u>11.85%</u>

**2015/16 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Caterpillar Global <sup>(2)</sup>	Industrial Machinery	\$ 50,645,062	9.40%
Energy Transfer Fuel LP	Pipeline	10,318,460	1.91%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	4,720,556	0.88%
TXU Business Services	Electric Utility	4,285,653	0.80%
Grayson-Collin Electric Coop	Electric Utility	4,268,956	0.79%
Techline Inc.	Utility Supply	3,496,655	0.65%
Enterprise Texas Pipeline LLC	Pipeline	2,818,849	0.52%
JTW Realty Texas LLC	Real Estate	2,356,904	0.44%
Foxworth Gailbraith Lumber Co.	Lumber	1,922,749	0.36%
EnterHealth LLC	Healthcare	1,713,283	0.32%
		<u>\$ 86,547,127</u>	<u>16.06%</u>

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division and the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

(2) Caterpillar Global closed its operations in the District in calendar year 2016 to consolidate its operations in Denison, Texas. The first year this closure impacts the District is the current 2017-18 fiscal year. The District estimates the tax revenue loss as a result of the closure to be approximately \$800,000 in the 2017-18 fiscal year.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY <sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Category</u>	<u>2017/18</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2016/17</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2015/16</u>	<u>% of Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 448,217,607	44.90%	\$ 390,767,416	42.64%	\$ 339,074,477	39.71%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	7,831,659	0.78%	5,558,074	0.61%	5,195,711	0.61%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	8,888,577	0.89%	9,272,194	1.01%	8,089,046	0.95%
Real, Acreage	299,120,013	29.97%	264,772,917	28.89%	257,235,670	30.13%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	119,881,296	12.01%	106,464,822	11.62%	90,982,579	10.66%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	54,411,775	5.45%	50,220,989	5.48%	46,160,412	5.41%
Oil & Gas	94,253	0.01%	40,340	0.00%	100,035	0.01%
Utilities	25,870,355	2.59%	27,342,158	2.98%	29,601,437	3.47%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	29,043,922	2.91%	58,702,267	6.41%	72,738,839	8.52%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	1,140,399	0.11%	737,916	0.08%	613,856	0.07%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	3,273,512	0.33%	2,103,061	0.23%	3,810,866	0.45%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>454,482</u>	<u>0.05%</u>	<u>417,164</u>	<u>0.05%</u>	<u>238,956</u>	<u>0.03%</u>
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 998,227,850</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 916,399,318</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 853,841,884</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 30,890,858		\$ 20,246,666		\$ 10,797,664	
Productivity Loss	289,649,540		255,569,926		247,957,868	
Exemptions	<u>62,555,579</u>	<sup>(2)</sup>	<u>59,121,565</u>	<sup>(2)</sup>	<u>56,135,257</u>	<sup>(2)</sup>
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 383,095,977</u>		<u>\$ 334,938,157</u>		<u>\$ 314,890,789</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 615,131,873</b>		<b>\$ 581,461,161</b>		<b>\$ 538,951,095</b>	

<u>Category</u>	<u>2014/15</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2013/14</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2012/13</u>	<u>% of Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 304,831,208	39.92%	\$ 275,770,324	38.50%	\$ 266,555,026	40.39%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	5,079,008	0.67%	4,249,134	0.59%	4,285,723	0.65%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	7,737,145	1.01%	7,803,680	1.09%	8,639,690	1.31%
Real, Acreage	211,180,197	27.65%	211,791,188	29.57%	216,539,679	32.81%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	82,479,250	10.80%	76,098,511	10.62%	70,606,549	10.70%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	45,351,889	5.94%	43,097,928	6.02%	42,968,749	6.51%
Oil & Gas	278,439	0.04%	263,243	0.04%	190,618	0.03%
Utilities	29,495,085	3.86%	29,509,709	4.12%	28,271,726	4.28%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	74,382,864	9.74%	64,894,335	9.06%	18,861,111	2.86%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	665,457	0.09%	713,783	0.10%	784,809	0.12%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	1,942,347	0.25%	1,784,630	0.25%	1,829,646	0.28%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>225,807</u>	<u>0.03%</u>	<u>370,079</u>	<u>0.05%</u>	<u>385,475</u>	<u>0.06%</u>
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 763,648,696</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 716,346,544</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 659,918,801</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 10,724,734		\$ 3,072,115		\$ 1,801,157	
Productivity Loss	202,150,210		203,808,729		201,891,190	
Exemptions	<u>36,459,749</u>		<u>35,517,277</u>		<u>34,299,931</u>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 249,334,693</u>		<u>\$ 242,398,121</u>		<u>\$ 237,992,278</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 514,314,003</b>		<b>\$ 473,948,423</b>		<b>\$ 421,926,523</b>	

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(3) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

# **PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

Fiscal Year	Outstanding	Less:	Plus:		Bonds	Percent of
Ending 8/31	Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Refunded	The	Total <sup>(1)</sup>	Unpaid	Principal
		Bonds	Bonds		At Year End	Retired
2018	\$ 1,660,000.00	\$ -	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 1,715,000.00	\$ 56,340,000.00	2.95%
2019	1,370,000.00	225,000.00	245,000.00	1,390,000.00	54,950,000.00	5.35%
2020	1,590,000.00	235,000.00	260,000.00	1,615,000.00	53,335,000.00	8.13%
2021	1,760,000.00	245,000.00	240,000.00	1,755,000.00	51,580,000.00	11.15%
2022	1,815,000.00	255,000.00	245,000.00	1,805,000.00	49,775,000.00	14.26%
2023	1,870,000.00	270,000.00	260,000.00	1,860,000.00	47,915,000.00	17.47%
2024	1,935,000.00	280,000.00	265,000.00	1,920,000.00	45,995,000.00	20.77%
2025	2,000,000.00	290,000.00	280,000.00	1,990,000.00	44,005,000.00	24.20%
2026	2,070,000.00	300,000.00	290,000.00	2,060,000.00	41,945,000.00	27.75%
2027	2,145,000.00	310,000.00	300,000.00	2,135,000.00	39,810,000.00	31.43%
2028	2,225,000.00	325,000.00	315,000.00	2,215,000.00	37,595,000.00	35.24%
2029	2,310,000.00	340,000.00	325,000.00	2,295,000.00	35,300,000.00	39.20%
2030	2,395,000.00	350,000.00	300,000.00	2,345,000.00	32,955,000.00	43.23%
2031	2,480,000.00	370,000.00	320,000.00	2,430,000.00	30,525,000.00	47.42%
2032	2,570,000.00	380,000.00	325,000.00	2,515,000.00	28,010,000.00	51.75%
2033	2,660,000.00	395,000.00	335,000.00	2,600,000.00	25,410,000.00	56.23%
2034	2,750,000.00	1,315,000.00	1,255,000.00	2,690,000.00	22,720,000.00	60.86%
2035	2,850,000.00	1,335,000.00	1,275,000.00	2,790,000.00	19,930,000.00	65.67%
2036	2,890,000.00			2,890,000.00	17,040,000.00	70.65%
2037	2,995,000.00			2,995,000.00	14,045,000.00	75.81%
2038	3,010,000.00			3,010,000.00	11,035,000.00	80.99%
2039	3,115,000.00			3,115,000.00	7,920,000.00	86.36%
2040	3,225,000.00			3,225,000.00	4,695,000.00	91.91%
2041	720,000.00			720,000.00	13,325,000.00	77.05%
2042	745,000.00			745,000.00	10,290,000.00	82.28%
2043	770,000.00			770,000.00	7,150,000.00	87.68%
2044	795,000.00			795,000.00	7,125,000.00	87.73%
2045	820,000.00			820,000.00	3,875,000.00	93.33%
2046	845,000.00			845,000.00	3,030,000.00	94.78%
Total	<u>\$ 58,385,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 7,220,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 6,890,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 58,055,000.00</u>		

(1) Excludes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service	Less:	Plus:			Combined Total <sup>(1)(2)</sup>
		Refunded Debt Service	The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>			
			Principal	Interest	Total	
2018	\$ 3,351,041.26	\$ 146,087.50	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 86,516.67	\$ 141,516.67	\$ 3,346,470.43
2019	3,537,472.51	517,175.00	245,000.00	258,450.00	503,450.00	3,523,747.51
2020	3,521,641.26	514,800.00	260,000.00	253,550.00	513,550.00	3,520,391.26
2021	3,642,561.26	515,400.00	240,000.00	248,350.00	488,350.00	3,615,511.26
2022	3,643,278.76	515,600.00	245,000.00	241,150.00	486,150.00	3,613,828.76
2023	3,642,153.76	520,400.00	260,000.00	233,800.00	493,800.00	3,615,553.76
2024	3,643,778.76	519,600.00	265,000.00	223,400.00	488,400.00	3,612,578.76
2025	3,641,466.26	518,400.00	280,000.00	212,800.00	492,800.00	3,615,866.26
2026	3,638,903.76	516,800.00	290,000.00	201,600.00	491,600.00	3,613,703.76
2027	3,638,791.26	514,800.00	300,000.00	190,000.00	490,000.00	3,613,991.26
2028	3,640,803.76	517,400.00	315,000.00	178,000.00	493,000.00	3,616,403.76
2029	3,643,178.76	519,400.00	325,000.00	165,400.00	490,400.00	3,614,178.76
2030	3,642,297.50	515,800.00	300,000.00	152,400.00	452,400.00	3,578,897.50
2031	3,640,560.00	521,800.00	320,000.00	140,400.00	460,400.00	3,579,160.00
2032	3,640,380.00	517,000.00	325,000.00	127,600.00	452,600.00	3,575,980.00
2033	3,642,155.00	516,800.00	335,000.00	114,600.00	449,600.00	3,574,955.00
2034	3,642,940.00	1,421,000.00	1,255,000.00	101,200.00	1,356,200.00	3,578,140.00
2035	3,641,385.00	1,388,400.00	1,275,000.00	51,000.00	1,326,000.00	3,578,985.00
2036	3,575,837.50					3,575,837.50
2037	3,578,781.26					3,578,781.26
2038	3,487,925.00					3,487,925.00
2039	3,488,231.26					3,488,231.26
2040	3,489,850.00					3,489,850.00
2041	872,587.50					872,587.50
2042	874,187.50					874,187.50
2043	874,975.00					874,975.00
2044	874,950.00					874,950.00
2045	874,112.50					874,112.50
2046	872,462.50					872,462.50
	<u>\$ 87,898,688.89</u>	<u>\$ 10,716,662.50</u>	<u>\$ 6,890,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 3,180,216.67</u>	<u>\$ 10,070,216.67</u>	<u>\$ 87,252,243.06</u>

(1) Includes accrued interest in the amount of \$23,071.11.

(2) Based on its wealth per student, the District expects to receive \$60,000 of state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for fiscal year 2017/18. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 3,616,403.76
Projected State Financial Assistance for Debt Service in 2017/18 <sup>(2)</sup>	60,000.00
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	\$ 3,556,403.76
 \$0.58995 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces <sup>(3)</sup>	 \$ 3,556,403.77
 2017/18 Net Taxable Valuation	 \$ 615,131,873.00

(1) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

(3) Bonds issued for new construction purposes are subject to the 50 cent test, and if the District uses State tier one funds to pass the test, under current law it must credit State assistance payments (including any tier one State funding used to demonstrate the District's ability to pass the \$0.50 bond issuance test) to the District's interest and sinking fund each year in an amount equal to the amount used by the District to demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 test, and the District may not adopt its annual interest and sinking fund tax rate until such amount of State funding has been credited to the District's interest and sinking fund. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - State Funding for Local School Districts," "DEBT LIMITATIONS" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS."

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

The District has no authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from any election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.



**COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES <sup>(1)</sup>**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
<b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>	<b>\$ 1,693,112</b>	<b>\$ 1,812,467</b>	<b>\$ 2,865,346</b>	<b>\$ 3,266,920</b>	<b>\$ 4,801,835</b>
<b>Revenues:</b>					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 4,843,754	\$ 5,441,702	\$ 5,891,997	\$ 6,199,177	\$ 6,562,679
State Sources	4,935,920	5,765,367	5,884,788	6,527,056	6,857,110
Federal Sources & Other	46,433	29,363	56,031	85,134	68,161
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$ 9,826,107</b>	<b>\$ 11,236,432</b>	<b>\$ 11,832,816</b>	<b>\$ 12,811,367</b>	<b>\$ 13,487,950</b>
<b>Expenditures:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 5,576,783	\$ 5,911,949	\$ 6,271,480	\$ 6,323,387	\$ 7,050,435
Instructional Resources & Media Services	157,692	147,822	125,059	134,649	135,352
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	74,932	76,012	216,333	147,093	144,765
School Leadership	500,794	656,282	595,374	680,119	674,905
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	166,878	183,806	190,989	202,768	212,699
Health Services	99,193	107,283	113,549	139,003	109,624
Student (Pupil) Transportation	282,242	150,463	270,349	240,820	256,493
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	636,400	626,428	660,820	826,444	777,881
General Administration	263,798	258,895	348,880	564,077	605,667
Plant Maintenance and Operations	1,126,798	1,223,122	1,409,550	1,404,847	1,456,570
Security and Monitoring Services	-	11,213	7,400	35,476	34,271
Data Processing Services	161,616	203,763	301,630	298,568	325,215
Debt Service - Principal on Long Term Debt	50,000	45,061	44,519	45,774	-
Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt	-	2,003	2,545	1,290	-
Facilities Acquisition and Construction	36,995	-	368,537	59,738	144,506
Payments to Shared Service Agreements	216,251	195,491	250,245	227,664	262,762
Other Intergovernmental Charges	115,784	123,960	129,437	134,361	143,385
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ 9,466,156</b>	<b>\$ 9,923,553</b>	<b>\$ 11,306,696</b>	<b>\$ 11,466,078</b>	<b>\$ 12,334,530</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ 359,951	\$ 1,312,879	\$ 526,120	\$ 1,345,289	\$ 1,153,420
<b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>					
Transfer In	\$ 66,820	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 403,658	\$ 49,467
Transfer Out	(492,770)	(300,000)	(124,546)	(214,032)	(147,545)
Sale of Real or Personal Property	185,354	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>	<b>\$ (240,596)</b>	<b>\$ (260,000)</b>	<b>\$ (124,546)</b>	<b>\$ 189,626</b>	<b>\$ (98,078)</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ 119,355	\$ 1,052,879	\$ 401,574	\$ 1,534,915	\$ 1,055,342
<b>Ending Fund Balance</b>	<b>\$ 1,812,467</b>	<b>\$ 2,865,346</b>	<b>\$ 3,266,920</b>	<b>\$ 4,801,835</b>	<b>\$ 5,857,177 <sup>(2)</sup></b>

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2017/18 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in the Official Statement.

(2) During fiscal year 2017-18, the District purchased a building for \$2.4 million to be used for District administration. Approximately \$1.5 million of the purchase price was funded from the General Fund balance and the remaining \$900,000 will be paid over the next five years pursuant to a loan agreement with the seller of the building.

**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
<b>Revenues:</b>					
<b>Program Revenues:</b>					
Charges for Services	\$ 753,898	\$ 756,400	\$ 803,387	\$ 986,292	\$ 934,378
Operating Grants and Contributions	910,950	950,670	1,002,062	1,247,401	1,048,005
<b>General Revenues:</b>					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	4,543,330	5,136,068	5,564,696	5,792,951	6,217,578
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	1,622,970	1,834,708	1,987,823	2,069,361	2,221,046
State Aid - Formula Grants	4,672,928	5,539,512	5,432,356	6,132,133	6,413,982
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	46,832	30,765	57,209	86,153	70,154
Investment Earnings	26,870	24,200	49,783	35,005	53,921
Miscellaneous	27,140	92,085	106,259	92,096	124,472
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<u>\$ 12,604,918</u>	<u>\$ 14,364,408</u>	<u>\$ 15,003,575</u>	<u>\$ 16,441,392</u>	<u>\$ 17,083,536</u>
<b>Expenses:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 6,553,136	\$ 6,889,330	\$ 6,987,461	\$ 7,422,068	\$ 7,982,876
Instruction Resources & Media Services	169,380	159,550	135,494	148,259	150,139
Curriculum & Staff Development	86,620	87,740	236,210	161,941	158,988
School Leadership	559,232	726,649	643,343	765,629	750,431
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	190,253	207,262	211,288	230,585	241,428
Health Services	110,881	119,011	123,777	153,631	124,411
Student Transportation	165,055	178,826	181,618	243,133	251,857
Food Service	539,638	474,928	517,787	620,094	546,853
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	1,024,977	964,240	1,094,677	1,217,565	1,226,590
General Administration	298,861	294,079	390,041	635,898	679,630
Plant Maintenance & Operations	1,255,362	1,363,857	1,550,549	1,546,520	1,626,148
Security and Monitoring Services	-	11,213	7,400	12,356	14,963
Data Processing Services	184,991	227,219	334,337	337,614	368,294
Community Services	30,120	31,160	35,848	45,933	48,682
Interest on Long-term Debt	1,449,978	1,182,394	1,332,046	1,626,937	1,303,299
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	102,996	3,049	93,750	92,165	129,210
Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	216,251	195,491	250,245	227,664	262,762
Other Intergovernmental Charges	115,784	123,960	129,437	134,361	143,385
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<u>\$ 13,053,515</u>	<u>\$ 13,239,958</u>	<u>\$ 14,255,308</u>	<u>\$ 15,622,353</u>	<u>\$ 16,009,946</u>
<b>Change in Net Assets</b>	\$ (448,597)	\$ 1,124,450	\$ 748,267	\$ 819,039	\$ 1,073,590
<b>Beginning Net Assets</b>	\$ 2,392,988	\$ 1,944,391	\$ 3,068,841	\$ 2,784,195	\$ 3,603,234
<b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ (1,032,913) <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Ending Net Assets</b>	<u>\$ 1,944,391</u>	<u>\$ 3,068,841</u>	<u>\$ 2,784,195</u>	<u>\$ 3,603,234</u>	<u>\$ 4,676,824</u>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34.

(2) The 2015 prior period adjustment is from the adoption of GASB Statement Number 68 (Accounting and Reporting for Pensions).

## **APPENDIX B**

### **GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT AND ITS ECONOMY**

(this page intentionally left blank)

## VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### General and Economic Information

The Van Alstyne Independent School District is in an agricultural area located in southern Grayson County with a small portion of the District extending into northern Collin County. The District occupies 69 square miles and the economy is supported largely by ranching and agriculture, but many residents commute to the Dallas/Fort Worth Metroplex or Sherman area to work or own businesses in the area. Access to the District is provided by U.S. Highway 75, State Highway 5, and Farm-to-Market 121. The current estimated population of the District is approximately 7,801.

Source: Texas Municipal Report for Van Alstyne ISD.

### Enrollment Statistics

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2007	1,386
2008	1,397
2009	1,327
2010	1,341
2011	1,340
2012	1,295
2013	1,293
2014	1,321
2015	1,376
2016	1,487
2017	1,567
Current	1,596

### District Staff

Teachers	109
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	27
Auxiliary Personnel	36
Administrators	13
Other	14
Total	<u>199</u>

### Facilities

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Current Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
Elementary School	K-4	614	675	1998	2015
Middle School	5-8	513	550	1972	2008
High School	9-12	469	800	2003	2015

### Principal Employers within the District

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Van Alstyne ISD	Education	199
Grayson Collin Electric Co-Op	Electricity	90
Foxworth Galbraith	Distribution Warehouse	75
Braum's	Restaurant	60
Meadowbrook Nursing Home	Healthcare	50
Caterpillar Logistics	Logistics Warehouse	47

### Unemployment Rates

	<u>January 2016</u>	<u>January 2017</u>	<u>January 2018</u>
Grayson County	3.9%	4.0%	3.4%
State of Texas	4.5%	5.0%	4.2%

Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

(this page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**

(this page intentionally left blank)



(Date of Delivery of Bonds)

**Proposed Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel**

*An opinion in substantially the following form will be delivered by McCall,  
Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, upon the delivery of the  
Bonds, assuming no material changes in facts or law.*

**VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**IN THE AGGREGATE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF \$6,890,000**

---

**AS BOND COUNSEL** for the Van Alstyne Independent School District (the "Issuer"), the issuer of the Bonds described above (the "Bonds"), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which bear interest from the dates specified in the text of the Bonds, at the rates and payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, maturing, unless redeemed prior to maturity in accordance with the terms of the Bonds, all in accordance with the terms and conditions stated in the text of the Bonds.

**WE HAVE EXAMINED** the applicable and pertinent provisions of the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and a transcript of certified proceedings of the Issuer, and other pertinent instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds, including the executed Bond Numbered T-1.

**BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION** that the Bonds have been authorized and issued and the Bonds delivered concurrently with this opinion have been duly delivered and that, assuming due authentication, Bonds issued in exchange therefore will have been duly delivered, in accordance with law, and that the Bonds, except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer relating to principles of sovereign immunity, bankruptcy, reorganization and other similar matters affecting creditors' rights generally, and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion, constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer, and ad valorem taxes sufficient to provide for the payment of the interest on and principal of the Bonds have been levied and pledged for such purpose, without limit as to rate or amount.

**IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION**, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual or corporate alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5)



of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Except as stated above, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning, or disposing of the Bonds, including the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. Owners of the Bonds should consult their tax advisors regarding the applicability of any collateral tax consequences of owning the Bonds.

**IN EXPRESSING THE AFOREMENTIONED OPINIONS**, we have relied on and assume continuing compliance with, certain representations contained in the federal tax certificate of the Issuer and covenants set forth in the order adopted by the Issuer to authorize the issuance of the Bonds, relating to, among other matters, the use of the project being refinanced and the investment and expenditure of the proceeds and certain other amounts used to pay or to secure the payment of debt service on the Bonds, the verification report of Grant Thornton LLP as to the sufficiency of the amounts initially deposited to the to the escrow fund to pay the redemption price of the refunded bonds, and the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund, the accuracy of which we have not independently verified. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or if the Issuer fails to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

**WE EXPRESS NO OPINION** as to any insurance policies issued with respect to the payments due for the principal of and interest on the Bonds, nor as to any such insurance policies issued in the future.

**OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW**, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service"); rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the Issuer as the taxpayer. We observe that the Issuer has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

**OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT** in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the Issuer, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the Issuer for the sole purpose of rendering our opinions with respect to the legality and validity of the



Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer, or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds, and have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the Issuer as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and assessed valuation of taxable property within the Issuer. Our role in connection with the Issuer's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

Respectfully,

(this page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017**

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Exhibit</u>		<u>Page</u>
	Certificate of Board	3
	Independent Auditors' Report	4
	Management's Discussion and Analysis	6
	 <b><u>Basic Financial Statements</u></b>	
	Government Wide Statements:	
A-1	Statement of Net Position	12
B-1	Statement of Activities	13
	Governmental Fund Financial Statements:	
C-1	Balance Sheet	14
C-2	Reconciliation for C-1	17
C-3	Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance	18
C-4	Reconciliation for C-3	21
	Proprietary Fund Financial Statements:	
D-1	Statement of Net Position	22
D-2	Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position	23
D-3	Statement of Cash Flows	24
	Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements:	
E-1	Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	25
	Notes to the Financial Statements	26
	 <b><u>Required Supplementary Information</u></b>	
G-1	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - General Fund	50
G-2	Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (TRS)	51
G-3	Schedule of District Contributions to Teacher Retirement System of Texas	52
	Notes to Required Supplemental Information	53
	 <b><u>Other Information-Combining Statements</u></b>	
	Nonmajor Governmental Funds:	
H-1	Combining Balance Sheet	56
H-2	Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances	58
	 <b><u>Other Information-Required Texas Education Agency Schedules</u></b>	
J-1	Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable	62
J-2	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - Child Nutrition Fund	64
J-3	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - Debt Service Fund	65
	 <b><u>Reports on Compliance &amp; Internal Control</u></b>	
	Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an audit of Financial Statements Performed In Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i>	68
	Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs	70
	Schedule of Status of Prior Findings	71
	Corrective Action Plan	72



CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Van Alstyne Independent School District  
Name of School District

Grayson  
County

091-908  
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one) \_\_\_\_\_ approved \_\_\_\_\_ disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2017 at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 11th day of December, 2017.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Board **Secretary**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Board **President**

If the Board of Trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is(are):  
(attach list as necessary)

***Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.***

Post Office Box 8158  
Greenville, Texas 75404

**Unmodified Opinions on Basic Financial Statements Accompanied by Required Supplementary Information  
and Other Information**

**Independent Auditor's Report**

Van Alstyne Independent School District  
549 Miller Lane  
Van Alstyne, Texas 75495

**Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Van Alstyne Independent School District as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

***Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements***

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

***Auditor's Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

***Opinions***

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Van Alstyne Independent School District as of August 31, 2017 and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

***Other Matters***

***Required Supplementary Information:***

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the Management's Discussion and Analysis on pages 6-10 and the Schedules contained in Exhibits G-1, G-2, & G-3 on pages 50-52 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial

reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

*Other Information:*

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise Van Alstyne Independent School District's basic financial statements. The Combining Statements for Nonmajor Governmental Funds contained in Exhibits H-1 & H-2 on pages 56-59 are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The Combining Statements for Nonmajor Governmental Funds are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the Combining Statements for Nonmajor Governmental Funds are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The Texas Education Agency requires school districts to include certain information in the Annual Financial and Compliance Report in conformity with laws and regulations of the State of Texas. This information is in Exhibits identified in the Table of Contents as J-1, J-2, & J-3. We have applied certain limited procedures to this supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted on inquiries of management about methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

**Other Reporting Required by Government Auditing Standard**

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated November 24, 2017 on our consideration of Van Alstyne Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering Van Alstyne Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

*/s/ Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.*

---

Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.  
Greenville, Texas

November 24, 2017

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

In this section of the Annual Financial and Compliance Report, we, the administrators of Van Alstyne Independent School District, discuss and analyze the District's financial performance for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. Please read it in conjunction with the District's Basic Financial Statements which follow this section.

**FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS**

- The District's total combined net position increased by \$1,073,590 as a result of this year's operations.
- The District's assets exceeded its liabilities at the close of the most recent fiscal year by \$4,676,824 which represents the District's total combined net position. Of this amount, \$4,779,842 (unrestricted net position) may be used to meet the District's ongoing obligations.
- As of August 31, 2017, the District's governmental funds reported a combined fund balance of \$19,624,855 compared to \$5,062,257 for the last fiscal year. Included in this amount is unspent bond proceeds of \$13,538,897 in the Bond Construction Fund. The General Fund reported a fund balance of \$5,857,177 this fiscal year compared to \$4,801,835 the last fiscal year.
- The District's total tax rate for the 2016-2017 school year was \$ 1.52 with \$ 1.12 for maintenance & operation and \$ 0.40 for debt service.

**USING THIS ANNUAL REPORT**

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 12 and 13). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements (starting on page 14) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. For proprietary activities, fund financial statements tell how goods or services of the District were sold to departments within the District or to external customers and how the sales revenues covered the expenses of the goods or services. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the district.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 26) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The combining statements for nonmajor funds contain even more information about the District's individual funds. These are not required by T.E.A. The section labeled Required Texas Education Agency Schedules contains data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

## **Reporting the District as a Whole**

### ***The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities***

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 12. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and liabilities at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all the revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting which is the basis used by private sector companies.

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as tuition received from students from outside the district and grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities or from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in them. The District's net position (the difference between assets and liabilities) provide one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position are one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider non-financial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, the District has one kind of activity:

- Governmental activities—All of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.

## **Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds**

### ***Fund Financial Statements***

The fund financial statements begin on page 14 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds—not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the ESEA Title 1 Part A from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes. The District's two kinds of funds—governmental and proprietary—use different accounting approaches.

- Governmental funds—Most of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.

- Proprietary funds—The District reports the activities for which it charges users (whether outside customers or other units of the District) in proprietary funds using the same accounting methods employed in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities. The internal service funds (a category of proprietary funds) report activities that provide services for the District's other programs and activities—such as the District's self-insurance programs.

## The District as Trustee

### *Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities*

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in separate Statements of Fiduciary Net Position on page 25. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes.

## GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

The District is presenting government-wide financial analysis in the form of current year data and prior year data and the changes in these accounts. Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental activities.

Net position of the District's governmental activities increased from \$3,603,234 last year to \$4,676,824 at August 31, 2017. Unrestricted net position – the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements – increased from \$3,905,463 last year to \$4,779,842 at August 31, 2017.

Changes in net position of the District's governmental activities were a \$819,039 increase last year compared to a \$1,073,590 increase at August 31, 2017.

**Table I**  
**Van Alstyne Independent School District**  
**NET POSITION**

	Governmental Activities 8/31/2017	Governmental Activities 8/31/2016	Net Change
Current and other assets	\$20,594,444	\$5,957,357	\$14,637,087
Capital assets	36,674,858	36,587,402	87,456
Total assets	<u>\$57,269,302</u>	<u>\$42,544,759</u>	<u>\$14,724,543</u>
Deferred Outflows	\$1,144,905	\$1,267,997	(\$123,092)
Current and other liabilities	\$690,824	\$629,112	\$61,712
Long-term liabilities	50,631,450	37,220,341	13,411,109
Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	2,283,472	2,196,637	86,835
Total liabilities	<u>\$53,605,746</u>	<u>\$40,046,090</u>	<u>\$13,559,656</u>
Deferred Inflows	\$131,637	\$163,432	(\$31,795)
Net Position:			
Net Investment in Capital Assets	(\$417,695)	(\$632,939)	\$215,244
Restricted	314,677	330,710	(16,033)
Unrestricted	4,779,842	3,905,463	874,379
Total net position	<u><u>\$4,676,824</u></u>	<u><u>\$3,603,234</u></u>	<u><u>\$1,073,590</u></u>

**Table II**  
**Van Alstyne Independent School District**  
**CHANGES IN NET POSITION**

	Governmental Activities Yr Ended 8/31/2017	Governmental Activities Yr Ended 8/31/2016	Net Change
Revenues:			
Program Revenues:			
Charges for Services	\$934,378	\$986,292	(\$51,914)
Operating grants and contributions	1,048,005	1,247,401	(199,396)
General Revenues:			
Maintenance and operations taxes	6,217,578	5,792,951	424,627
Debt service taxes	2,221,046	2,069,361	151,685
State aid - formula grants	6,413,982	6,132,133	281,849
Grants & Contributions not restricted to specific functions	70,154	86,153	(15,999)
Investment Earnings	53,921	35,005	18,916
Miscellaneous	124,472	92,096	32,376
Total Revenue	<u>\$17,083,536</u>	<u>\$16,441,392</u>	<u>\$642,144</u>
Expenses:			
Instruction, curriculum and media services	\$8,292,003	\$7,732,268	\$559,735
Instructional and school leadership	750,431	765,629	(15,198)
Student support services	617,696	627,349	(9,653)
Child nutrition	546,853	620,094	(73,241)
Co curricular activities	1,226,590	1,217,565	9,025
General administration	679,630	635,898	43,732
Plant maintenance, security & data processing	2,009,405	1,896,490	112,915
Community services	48,682	45,933	2,749
Debt services	1,432,509	1,719,102	(286,593)
Payments to fiscal agents	262,762	227,664	35,098
Other intergovernmental charges	143,385	134,361	9,024
Total Expenses	<u>\$16,009,946</u>	<u>\$15,622,353</u>	<u>\$387,593</u>
<b>Increase in net position before transfers and special items</b>	<b>\$1,073,590</b>	<b>\$819,039</b>	<b>\$254,551</b>
Transfers	0	0	0
Special Items	0	0	0
Net Position at Beginning of Fiscal Year	3,603,234	2,784,195	819,039
Net Position at End of Fiscal Year	<u><u>\$4,676,824</u></u>	<u><u>\$3,603,234</u></u>	<u><u>\$1,073,590</u></u>

## THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As the District completed the year, its governmental funds (as presented in Exhibit C-3 on page 18) reported a combined fund balance of \$19,624,855 compared to \$5,062,257 for the last fiscal year. The District's General Fund reported a fund balance increase of \$1,055,342, ending the year with \$5,857,177. The District's Special Revenue Funds reported a fund balance decrease of \$39,739, ending the year with \$198,472. The District's Debt Service Fund reported a fund balance increase of \$8,098, ending the year with \$30,309. The District's Capital Projects Fund reported a fund balance increase of \$13,538,897, ending the year with \$13,538,897.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget several times. These budget amendments included amendments and supplemental appropriations that were approved shortly after the beginning of the year and reflect the actual beginning balances (versus the amounts we estimated in August 2016) and amendments moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs.

## **CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION**

### **Capital Assets:**

During the year ended August 31, 2017, the District invested \$1,558,689 in capital assets, consisting of various facility improvements, a greenhouse, technology equipment, a gooseneck trailer, various equipment, two trucks, and two school buses.

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2017 was as follows:

	<u>Beginning</u>			<u>Ending</u>
	<u>Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Retirements</u>	<u>Balance</u>
Land	\$818,786	\$0	\$0	\$818,786
Buildings & Improvements	50,559,382	144,506	0	50,703,888
Equipment	2,138,056	221,147	0	2,359,203
Vehicles	1,121,778	228,837		1,350,615
Construction in Progress	0	964,199	0	964,199
Totals at Historical Cost	54,638,002	1,558,689	0	56,196,691
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings & Improvements	(15,914,766)	(1,252,089)	0	(17,166,855)
Equipment	(1,600,409)	(98,449)	0	(1,698,858)
Vehicles	(535,425)	(120,695)	0	(656,120)
Total accumulated depreciation	(18,050,600)	(1,471,233)	0	(19,521,833)
Capital Assets, Net	\$36,587,402	\$87,456	\$0	\$36,674,858

### **Debt:**

At year-end August 31, 2017, the District had \$50,631,450 outstanding in bonds compared to \$37,220,341 last year. During the year, the District issued Series 2017 bonds of \$14,285,000 to finance new construction. The new bonds are payable over the next 23 years at 2.00-4.00% interest.

## **ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES**

The District's elected and appointed officials considered many factors when setting the fiscal-year 2017 budget, and tax rates. Several of those factors were the economy, the District's population growth, and unemployment. These factors were taken into account when adopting the General Fund budget for 2017. Amounts available for appropriation in the General Fund budget are \$2,757,177. The District has added no major new programs or initiatives to the 2017 budget.

## **CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office, at Van Alstyne Independent School District, 549 Miller Lane, Van Alstyne, Texas.



## BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT A-1

Data	Primary Government	
Control Codes	Governmental Activities	
ASSETS		
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 403,903
1120	Current Investments	18,849,156
1220	Property Taxes Receivable (Delinquent)	361,422
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(5,647)
1240	Due from Other Governments	985,610
	Capital Assets:	
1510	Land	818,786
1520	Buildings, Net	33,537,033
1530	Equipment, Net	660,345
1540	Vehicles, Net	694,495
1580	Construction in Progress	964,199
1000	Total Assets	57,269,302
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES		
1705	Deferred Outflow Related to TRS	1,144,905
1700	Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	1,144,905
LIABILITIES		
2110	Accounts Payable	37,860
2140	Interest Payable	70,460
2150	Payroll Deductions & Withholdings	76,568
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	456,908
2180	Due to Other Governments	9,258
2200	Accrued Expenses	10,349
2300	Unearned Revenue	29,421
	Noncurrent Liabilities	
2501	Due Within One Year	1,660,000
2502	Due in More Than One Year	48,971,450
2540	Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	2,283,472
2000	Total Liabilities	53,605,746
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES		
2605	Deferred Inflow Related to TRS	131,637
2600	Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	131,637
NET POSITION		
3200	Net Investment in Capital Assets	(417,695)
3850	Restricted for Debt Service	116,205
3870	Restricted for Campus Activities	110,132
3880	Restricted for Scholarships	7,971
3890	Restricted for Other Purposes	80,369
3900	Unrestricted	4,779,842
3000	Total Net Position	\$ 4,676,824

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

		Program Revenues		Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position
Data	1	3	4	6
Control			Operating	Primary Gov.
Codes	Expenses	Charges for Services	Grants and Contributions	Governmental Activities
<b>Primary Government:</b>				
GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:				
11 Instruction	\$ 7,982,876	\$ 203,455	\$ 789,353	\$ (6,990,068)
12 Instructional Resources and Media Services	150,139	-	-	(150,139)
13 Curriculum and Staff Development	158,988	-	-	(158,988)
23 School Leadership	750,431	-	-	(750,431)
31 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	241,428	-	-	(241,428)
33 Health Services	124,411	-	-	(124,411)
34 Student (Pupil) Transportation	251,857	-	-	(251,857)
35 Food Services	546,853	225,072	258,652	(63,129)
36 Extracurricular Activities	1,226,590	496,408	-	(730,182)
41 General Administration	679,630	-	-	(679,630)
51 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,626,148	9,443	-	(1,616,705)
52 Security and Monitoring Services	14,963	-	-	(14,963)
53 Data Processing Services	368,294	-	-	(368,294)
61 Community Services	48,682	-	-	(48,682)
72 Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt	1,303,299	-	-	(1,303,299)
73 Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	129,210	-	-	(129,210)
93 Payments related to Shared Services Arrangements	262,762	-	-	(262,762)
99 Other Intergovernmental Charges	143,385	-	-	(143,385)
[TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:	\$ 16,009,946	\$ 934,378	\$ 1,048,005	(14,027,563)

Data  
Control  
Codes

## General Revenues:

## Taxes:

MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes	6,217,578
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service	2,221,046
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants	6,413,982
GC	Grants and Contributions not Restricted	70,154
IE	Investment Earnings	53,921
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue	124,472
TR	Total General Revenues	<u>15,101,153</u>
CN	Change in Net Position	1,073,590
NB	Net Position - Beginning	<u>3,603,234</u>
NE	Net Position--Ending	<u>\$ 4,676,824</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Bond Construction
<b>ASSETS</b>			
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ (42,628)	\$ 11,100	\$ 275,670
1120 Investments - Current	5,562,477	23,452	13,263,227
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	267,644	93,778	-
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes (Credit)	(4,182)	(1,465)	-
1240 Receivables from Other Governments	882,136	16,234	-
1260 Due from Other Funds	11,219	-	-
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 6,676,666</u>	<u>\$ 143,099</u>	<u>\$ 13,538,897</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
2150 Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable	\$ 76,568	\$ -	\$ -
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	433,327	-	-
2170 Due to Other Funds	36,968	11,219	-
2180 Due to Other Governments	-	9,258	-
2200 Accrued Expenditures	9,164	-	-
2300 Unearned Revenues	21,677	7,744	-
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>577,704</u>	<u>28,221</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>			
2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	241,785	84,569	-
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>241,785</u>	<u>84,569</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>			
Restricted Fund Balance:			
3470 Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation	-	-	13,538,897
3480 Retirement of Long-Term Debt	-	30,309	-
3490 Other Restricted Fund Balance	-	-	-
Committed Fund Balance:			
3510 Construction	3,100,000	-	-
3545 Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	2,757,177	-	-
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>5,857,177</u>	<u>30,309</u>	<u>13,538,897</u>
4000 Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances	<u>\$ 6,676,666</u>	<u>\$ 143,099</u>	<u>\$ 13,538,897</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Other Governmental Funds		Total Governmental Funds	
\$	135,998	\$	380,140
	-		18,849,156
	-		361,422
	-		(5,647)
	87,240		985,610
	-		11,219
\$	223,238	\$	20,581,900
\$	-	\$	76,568
	23,581		456,908
	-		48,187
	-		9,258
	1,185		10,349
	-		29,421
	24,766		630,691
	-		326,354
	-		326,354
	-		13,538,897
	-		30,309
	7,971		7,971
	-		3,100,000
	190,501		190,501
	-		2,757,177
	198,472		19,624,855
\$	223,238	\$	20,581,900

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2017

<b>Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	<b>\$ 19,624,855</b>
1 The District uses internal service funds to charge the costs of certain activities, such as self-insurance, to appropriate functions in other funds. The assets and liabilities of the internal service funds are included in governmental activities in the statement of net assets. The net effect of this consolidation is to increase(decrease) net position.	22,871
2 Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and therefore are not reported in governmental funds. At the beginning of the year, the cost of these assets was \$54,638,002 and the accumulated depreciation was \$18,050,600. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable of \$37,220,341, are not due and payable in the current period, and, therefore are not reported as liabilities in the funds. Accrued interest payable on long term debt of \$52,107 is not reflected in the fund financial statements, but is shown in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the beginning balances for capital assets (net of depreciation), and long-term debt in the governmental activities, is to increase (decrease) net position.	(685,046)
3 Current year capital outlays of \$1,558,689 and long-term debt principal payments of \$1,050,000 are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. Accretion on capital appreciation bonds of \$16,965, amortization of bond premiums of \$146,926, and interest payable of \$18,353 are recorded in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the current year capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase (decrease) net position.	2,754,227
4 The current year depreciation expense increases accumulated depreciation. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.	(1,471,233)
5 Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes of \$326,354 as revenue, eliminating interfund transactions, reclassifying bond proceeds of \$14,285,000 and bond premiums of \$340,000, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.	(14,298,646)
6 The District is required to recognize its proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68 in the amount of \$2,283,472, a deferred resource inflow related to TRS in the amount of \$131,637, and a deferred resource outflow related to TRS in the amount of \$1,144,905. The net effect of including the net pension liability, deferred resource inflows, and deferred resource outflows, is to increase (decrease) net position.	(1,270,204)
<b>19 Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<b>\$ 4,676,824</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Bond Construction
REVENUES:			
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 6,562,679	\$ 2,227,719	\$ 5,764
5800 State Program Revenues	6,857,110	84,034	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	68,161	-	-
5020 Total Revenues	13,487,950	2,311,753	5,764
EXPENDITURES:			
Current:			
0011 Instruction	7,050,435	-	-
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	135,352	-	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	144,765	-	-
0023 School Leadership	674,905	-	-
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	212,699	-	-
0033 Health Services	109,624	-	-
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	256,493	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	777,881	-	-
0041 General Administration	605,667	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,456,570	-	-
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	34,271	-	-
0053 Data Processing Services	325,215	-	-
0061 Community Services	-	-	-
Debt Service:			
0071 Principal on Long Term Debt	-	1,050,000	-
0072 Interest on Long Term Debt	-	1,448,837	-
0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	129,210	-
Capital Outlay:			
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	144,506	-	966,867
Intergovernmental:			
0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	262,762	-	-
0099 Other Intergovernmental Charges	143,385	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	12,334,530	2,628,047	966,867
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	1,153,420	(316,294)	(961,103)
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):			
7911 Capital Related Debt Issued (Regular Bonds)	-	59,392	14,285,000
7915 Transfers In	49,467	140,000	-
7916 Premium or Discount on Issuance of Bonds	-	125,000	215,000
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	(147,545)	-	-
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(98,078)	324,392	14,500,000
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	1,055,342	8,098	13,538,897
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	4,801,835	22,211	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 5,857,177	\$ 30,309	\$ 13,538,897

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.



Other Governmental Funds		Total Governmental Funds	
\$	636,534	\$	9,432,696
	59,909		7,001,053
	391,116		459,277
	1,087,559		16,893,026
	192,373		7,242,808
	-		135,352
	-		144,765
	-		674,905
	-		212,699
	-		109,624
	-		256,493
	491,268		491,268
	353,053		1,130,934
	-		605,667
	-		1,456,570
	-		34,271
	-		325,215
	48,682		48,682
	-		1,050,000
	-		1,448,837
	-		129,210
	-		1,111,373
	-		262,762
	-		143,385
	1,085,376		17,014,820
	2,183		(121,794)
	-		14,344,392
	7,545		197,012
	-		340,000
	(49,467)		(197,012)
	(41,922)		14,684,392
	(39,739)		14,562,598
	238,211		5,062,257
\$	198,472	\$	19,624,855

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,  
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

<b>Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$ 14,562,598
The District uses internal service funds to charge the costs of certain activities, such as self-insurance, to appropriate functions in other funds. The net income (loss) of internal service funds are reported with governmental activities. The net effect of this consolidation is to increase (decrease) net position.	(28,177)
Current year capital outlays of \$1,558,689 and long-term debt principal payments of \$1,050,000 are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. Accretion on capital appreciation bonds of \$16,965, amortization of bond premiums of \$146,926, and interest payable of \$18,353 are recorded in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the current year capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase (decrease) net position.	2,754,227
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.	(1,471,233)
Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue as revenue, adjusting current year revenue by \$59,307 to show the revenue earned from the current year's tax levy, eliminating interfund transactions, reclassifying bond proceeds of \$14,285,000 and bond premiums of \$340,000, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.	(14,565,693)
Current year changes due to GASB 68 increased revenues in the amount of \$71,811, but also increased expenses in the amount of \$249,943. The impact of these items is to increase (decrease) the change in net position.	(178,132)
<b>Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	\$ 1,073,590

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
<hr/>	
ASSETS	
Current Assets:	
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 23,763
Due from Other Funds	<u>36,968</u>
Total Assets	<u>60,731</u>
LIABILITIES	
Current Liabilities:	
Accounts Payable	<u>37,860</u>
Total Liabilities	<u>37,860</u>
NET POSITION	
Unrestricted Net Position	<u>22,871</u>
Total Net Position	<u><u>\$ 22,871</u></u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN FUND NET POSITION  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
OPERATING REVENUES:	
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 729
Total Operating Revenues	729
OPERATING EXPENSES:	
Other Operating Costs	28,906
Total Operating Expenses	28,906
Operating Income (Loss)	(28,177)
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	51,048
Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 22,871

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
<u>Cash Flows from Operating Activities:</u>	
Cash Received from User Charges	\$ 72
Cash Payments for Insurance Claims	(27,974)
Net Cash Used for Operating Activities	(27,902)
Net Decrease in Cash and Cash Equivalents	(27,902)
Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year	51,665
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year	\$ 23,763
<u>Reconciliation of Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash</u>	
<u>Used for Operating Activities:</u>	
Operating Income (Loss):	\$ (28,177)
Effect of Increases and Decreases in Current Assets and Liabilities:	
Decrease (increase) in Receivables	(657)
Increase (decrease) in Accounts Payable	932
Net Cash Used for Operating Activities	\$ (27,902)

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

	Agency Fund
<hr/>	
ASSETS	
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 23,307
Total Assets	<u>\$ 23,307</u>
LIABILITIES	
Due to Student Groups	\$ 23,307
Total Liabilities	<u>\$ 23,307</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**Note A. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

Van Alstyne Independent School District (the "District") is a public educational agency operating under the applicable laws and regulations of the State of Texas. It is governed by a seven member Board of Trustees (the "Board") elected by registered voters of the District. The District prepares its basic financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and other authoritative sources identified in *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 69* of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants; and it complies with the requirements of the appropriate version of Texas Education Agency's *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide* (the "Resource Guide") and the requirements of contracts and grants of agencies from which it receives funds.

*Pensions.* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

As of August 31, 2017, Van Alstyne Independent School District retrospectively and prospectively applied Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") Statement No. 72, *Fair Value Measurement and Application*. GASB Statement No. 72 provides guidance for determining a fair value measurement for reporting purposes and applying fair value to certain investments and disclosures related to all fair value measurements.

**1. Reporting Entity**

The Board of Trustees has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary public education within the jurisdiction of Van Alstyne Independent School District. The members of the Board of Trustees are elected by the public, have the authority to make decisions, appoint administrators and managers, and significantly influence operations. It also has the primary accountability for fiscal matters. The District is not included in any other "governmental entity" as defined by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") in its Statement No. 14, *"The Financial Reporting Entity."* There are no component units included within the reporting entity. The District receives funding from local, state, and federal governmental sources and must comply with the requirements of these funding source entities.

**2. Government-Wide and Fund Financial Statements**

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities are government-wide financial statements. They report information on all of the Van Alstyne Independent School District's nonfiduciary activities with most of the interfund activities removed. *Governmental activities* include programs supported primarily by taxes, state foundation funds, grants and other intergovernmental revenues. *Business-type activities* include operations that rely to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The Statement of Activities demonstrates how other people or entities that participate in programs the District operates have shared in the payment of the direct costs. The "charges for services" column includes payments made by parties that purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods or services provided by a given function or segment of the District. Examples include tuition paid by students not residing in the district, school lunch charges, etc. The "grants and contributions" column includes amounts paid by organizations outside the District to help meet the operational or capital requirements of a given function. Examples include grants under the Elementary and Secondary Education Act Title I. If revenue is not program revenue, it is general revenue used to support all of the District's functions. Property taxes are always general revenues.



Interfund activities between governmental funds, and between governmental funds and proprietary funds, appear as “due to & due from” on the Governmental Fund Balance Sheet and Proprietary Fund Statement of Net Position, and as “other resources & other uses” on the Governmental Fund Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance and on the Proprietary Fund Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Net Position. All interfund transactions between governmental funds and between governmental funds and internal service funds are eliminated on the government-wide statements. Interfund activities between governmental funds and fiduciary funds remain as “due to & due from” on the government-wide Statement of Activities.

The fund financial statements provide reports on the financial condition and results of operations for three fund categories - governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary. Since the resources in the fiduciary funds cannot be used for District operations, they are not included in the government-wide statements. The District considers some governmental funds major and reports their financial condition and results of operations in a separate column.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues and expenses result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. All other revenues and expenses are nonoperating.

### **3. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting, and Financial Statement Presentation**

The government-wide financial statements use the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting, as do the proprietary fund and fiduciary fund financial statements. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

Governmental fund financial statements use the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. With this measurement focus, only current assets, current liabilities and fund balances are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present net increases and decreases in current assets (i.e., revenues and other financing sources and expenditures and other financing uses).

The modified accrual basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become both measurable and available, and it recognizes expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest and principal on long-term debt, which is recognized when due. The expenditures related to certain compensated absences and claims and judgments are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Revenues are considered to be available when they are collectible within 60 days after year-end.

Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible-to-accrual concept, that is, when they are both measurable and available. The District considers them available if they will be collected within 60 days of the end of the fiscal year. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available.

Grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant. Accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as deferred revenues until related and authorized expenditures have been made. If balances have not been expended by the end of the project period, grantors sometimes require the District to refund all or part of the unused amount.

The Proprietary Fund Types and Fiduciary Funds are accounted for on a flow of economic resources measurement focus and utilize the accrual basis of accounting. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they are earned and become measurable and expenses in the accounting period in which they are incurred and become measurable. Agency Funds apply the accrual basis of accounting, but do not have a measurement focus. The District applies all GASB pronouncements as well as the Financial Accounting Standards Board pronouncements issued on or before November 30, 1989, unless these pronouncements conflict or contradict GASB pronouncements. With this measurement focus, all assets and all liabilities associated with the operation of

these funds are included on the Statement of Net Position. The fund equity is segregated into net investment in capital assets, restricted net position, and unrestricted net position

#### **4. Fund Accounting**

The District's accounts are organized on the basis of funds, each of which is considered to be a separate accounting entity. The operations of each fund are accounted for by providing a separate set of self-balancing accounts which are comprised of each fund's assets, liabilities, equity, revenues and expenditures.

The District reports the following **major** governmental funds:

**General Fund** – This governmental fund is established to account for resources financing the fundamental operations of the District, in partnership with the community, in enabling and motivating students to reach their full potential. All revenues and expenditures not required to be accounted for in other funds are included here. This is a budgeted fund and any fund balances are considered resources available for current operations. Fund balances may be appropriated by the Board of Trustees to implement its responsibilities

**Debt Service Fund** – This governmental fund is established to account for payment of principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt and other long-term debts for which a tax has been dedicated. This is a budgeted fund and a separate bank account is maintained for this fund. Any unused sinking fund balances are transferred to the General Fund after all of the related debt obligations have been met. It is considered major because its resources exceed 10% of the District's total resources.

**Capital Projects Fund** – This governmental fund is established to account for proceeds from the sale of bonds and other resources to be used for Board authorized acquisition, construction, or renovation, as well as, furnishing and equipping of major capital facilities. It is considered major because its resources exceed 10% of the District's total resources.

Additionally, the District reports the following **nonmajor** fund types:

Governmental Fund Types:

**Special Revenue Funds** – These governmental funds are established to account for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a Special Revenue Fund. Most federal and some state financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods. Project accounting is employed to maintain integrity of the various sources of funds.

The District's Food Service Fund is considered a special revenue fund since it meets the following criteria: (1) User fees are charged to supplement the National School Lunch Program, (2) The General Fund subsidizes the Food Service Program for all expenditures in excess of the National School Lunch Program, and (3) The District does not consider the Food Service Program completely self-supporting. Food Service fund balances are used exclusively for child nutrition program purposes.

Proprietary Funds:

**Internal Service Fund** – This fund is established to account for revenues and expenses related to services provided to organizations inside the District on a cost reimbursement basis. The District's Internal Service Fund is for Workers Compensation Self-Insurance.

Fiduciary Funds:

**Agency Funds** – These funds are established to account for resources held for others in a custodial capacity. Financial resources for the Agency funds are recorded as assets and liabilities; therefore, these funds do not include revenues and expenditures and have no fund equity. The District's Agency Funds are for Student Activity Funds.

## **5. Cash and Cash Equivalents**

For purposes of the statement of cash flows for proprietary funds, highly liquid investments are considered to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased. Cash and cash equivalents in the Internal Service fund was \$23,763 as of August 31, 2017.

## **6. Investments**

Investments are recorded at fair value. Fair value is the amount at which a financial instrument could be exchanged in a current transaction between willing parties, other than in a forced or liquidation sale.

## **7. Inventories**

All inventories are valued at cost using the first in/first out (FIFO) method. The District purchases of supplies as expenditures. If any supplies are on hand at the end of the year, their cost is recorded as inventory and fund balance is reserved for the same amount.

## **8. Asset Capitalization and Useful Lives**

Capital assets, which include land, buildings, furniture and equipment, are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities columns in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are defined by the District as assets with an initial, individual unit cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of two years. Such assets are recorded at historical cost or estimated historical cost if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated fair market value at the date of donation.

The costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets lives are not capitalized. Major outlays for capital assets and improvements are capitalized as projects are constructed.

Buildings, furniture, and equipment of the District are depreciated using the straight line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Assets</u>	<u>Years</u>
Buildings	39-50
Building Improvements	15-40
Vehicles & Buses	5-10
Equipment	5-7

## **9. Compensated Absences**

It is the District's policy to permit some employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation and sick pay benefits. There is no liability for unpaid accumulated sick leave since the District does not have a policy to pay any amounts when employees separate from service with the government. All vacation pay is accrued when incurred in the government-wide, proprietary, and fiduciary fund financial statements. A liability for these amounts is reported in governmental funds only if they have matured, for example, as a result of employee resignations and retirements.

## **10. Long-Term Debt**

In the government-wide financial statements, and proprietary fund types in the fund financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities, or proprietary fund type statement of net assets. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Bond issuance costs are expenses when incurred.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognized bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of bonded debt issued plus the premiums/discounts received on the issuance of bonds are reported as other financing sources. The amounts of issuance costs are reported as expenditures.

## 11. Fund Balance

In accordance with GASB 54 and school board policy, the District is reporting its fund balances in the governmental fund financial statements in each of the following categories:

*Non-spendable fund balance* – represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaids) or legally required to remain intact (such as notes receivable or principal of a permanent fund).

*Restricted fund balance* – represents amounts with external constraints placed on the use of these resources (such as debt covenants, grantors, other governments, etc.) or imposed by enabling legislation. Restrictions may be changed or lifted only with the consent of resource providers.

*Committed fund balance* – represents amounts that can only be used for specific purposes imposed by a formal action of the District’s highest level of decision-making authority, the School Board. Committed resources cannot be used for any other purposes unless the Board removes or changes the specific use by taking the same formal action that imposed the constraint originally.

*Assigned fund balance* – represents amounts the District intends to use for specific purposes as expressed by the Board or an official delegated with the authority. The Board has delegated the authority to assign fund balances to the Superintendent.

*Unassigned fund balance* – represents the residual classification for the general fund or deficit balances in other funds.

In circumstances where an expenditure is to be made for a purpose for which amounts are available in multiple fund balance classifications, the order in which resources will be expended is as follows: restricted fund balance, committed fund balance, assigned fund balance, and then unassigned fund balance.

As of August 31, 2017, the District’s fund balances are classified as follows:

	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Debt Service</u> <u>Fund</u>	<u>Bond</u> <u>Construction</u> <u>Fund</u>	<u>Other</u> <u>Governmental</u> <u>Funds</u>	<u>Totals</u>
<b>Restricted for:</b>					
Bond Construction			\$13,538,897		\$13,538,897
Debt Service		30,309			30,309
Scholarships				7,971	7,971
<b>Committed to:</b>					
Construction	3,100,000				3,100,000
Other Activities				190,501	190,501
<b>Unassigned</b>	2,757,177				2,757,177
<b>Total Fund Balances</b>	<u>\$5,857,177</u>	<u>\$30,309</u>	<u>\$13,538,897</u>	<u>\$198,472</u>	<u>\$19,624,855</u>

## 12. Functions

School Districts are required to report all expenses by function, except certain indirect expenses. General administration, data processing services, and other intergovernmental charges functions (data control codes 41, 53, and 99 respectively) include expenses that are indirect expenses of other functions. These indirect expenses are not allocated to other functions.

### **13. Restricted Assets**

When the District incurs an expense for which it may use either restricted or unrestricted assets, it uses the restricted assets first whenever they will have to be returned if they are not used.

### **14. Data Control Codes**

The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by TEA in the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Texas Education Agency requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with the Agency in order to insure accuracy in building a statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

### **15. Risk Management – Claims and Judgments**

In the normal course of operations, the District is exposed to risks of loss from a number of sources including fire and casualty losses, errors or omissions by board members and employees, and injuries to employees during the course of performing their duties. The District attempts to cover these losses by the purchase of insurance. Significant losses are covered by commercial insurance for property and liability programs. For insured programs, there have been no significant reductions in coverage. Settlement amounts have not exceeded insurance coverage for the current year or the past three years.

#### **Health Care Coverage**

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of the District were covered by a uniform statewide health care program for public education employees. The District contributed \$266 per month, which includes \$75 per month which is reimbursed by the State of Texas, per employee to the Plan. Employees, at their option, may authorize payroll withholdings to pay the remaining balance of the premium for employee coverage and/or dependents. All contributions/premiums were paid to the statewide health care program. The Plan was authorized by House Bill 3343 and is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS).

#### **Workers Compensation Coverage**

The District has entered into an agreement with the Texas Educational Insurance Association to self-fund their workers compensation plan. The latter agreement is administered by Claims Administrative Services, Inc. Transactions related to the plan are accounted for in the Workers Compensation Insurance Fund (the "Fund"), an internal service fund of the District. The District makes all contributions to the fund. Claims Administrative Services, Inc. obtained excess loss insurance, which limited annual claims paid from the entire fund for the year ended August 31, 2017, to \$225,000 for any individual participant.

Estimates of claims payable and of claims incurred, but not reported at August 31, 2017, are reflected as accounts and claims payable of the Fund. The plan is funded to discharge liabilities of the Fund as they become due.

Changes in the balances of claims liabilities during the past two years are as follows:

	<u>Year Ended August 31, 2017</u>	<u>Year Ended August 31, 2016</u>
Unpaid claims, beginning of fiscal year	\$36,928	\$51,361
Incurred claims (including IBNR's)	28,906	30,876
Claim payments	(27,974)	(45,309)
Unpaid claims, end of fiscal year	<u>\$37,860</u>	<u>\$36,928</u>

### **16. Estimates and Assumptions**

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and

disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

**Note B. Reconciliation of Government-Wide and Fund Financial Statements**

**Explanation of certain differences between the governmental fund balance sheet and the government-wide statement of net assets:**

Exhibit C-2 provides the reconciliation between the fund balance for total governmental funds on the governmental fund balance sheet and the net assets for governmental activities as reported in the government-wide statement of net position.

One element of that reconciliation explains that capital assets are not financial resources and are therefore not reported in governmental funds. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period and are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The details for these elements are as follows:

<u>Capital Assets at the Beginning of the year</u>	<u>Historic Cost</u>	<u>Accumulated Depreciation</u>	<u>Net Value at the Beginning of the Year</u>	<u>Change in Net Position</u>
Land	\$818,786		\$818,786	
Buildings	50,559,382	(15,914,766)	34,644,616	
Equipment	2,138,056	(1,600,409)	537,647	
Vehicles	1,121,778	(535,425)	586,353	
Construction in Progress	0	0	0	
Change in Net Position				\$36,587,402

  

<u>Long-term Liabilities at the Beginning of the year</u>	<u>Payable at the Beginning of the year</u>	
Bonds Payable	\$37,220,341	
Bond Interest Payable	52,107	
Change in Net Assets		(\$37,272,448)
Net Adjustment to Net Position		(\$685,046)

**Explanation of certain differences between the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances and the government-wide statement of activities:**

Exhibit C-4 provides reconciliation between the net changes in fund balance as shown on the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances and the changes in net position of governmental activities as reported on the government-wide statement of activities.

One element of that reconciliation explains that current year capital outlays and debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but should be shown as increases in capital assets and decreases in long-term debt in the government-wide statements. These adjustments affect both the net position balance and the change in net assets. The details of these adjustments are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Changes in Net Position</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
<u>Current Year Capital Outlay</u>			
Buildings & Improvements	\$144,506		
Equipment	221,147		
Vehicles	228,837		
Construction in Progress	964,199		
Total Capital Outlay	<u>\$1,558,689</u>	\$1,558,689	\$1,558,689
<u>Debt Service Payments</u>			
Bond Principal	\$1,050,000		
Bond Interest Payable	(18,353)		
Accretion on Capital Appreciation Bonds	16,965		
Amortization of Bond Premiums	146,926		
Total Principal Payments	<u>\$1,195,538</u>	\$1,195,538	\$1,195,538
Total Adjustment to Net Position		<u>\$2,754,227</u>	<u>\$2,754,227</u>

Another element of the reconciliation on Exhibit C-4 is described as various other reclassifications and eliminations necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. This adjustment is the result of several items. The details for this element are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Changes in Net Position</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
<u>Adjustments to Revenue and Unavailable Revenue</u>			
Net Property Tax Revenue Adjustment	\$59,307	\$59,307	\$326,354
<u>Reclassify Bond Proceeds</u>			
Reclassify Bond Proceeds & Bond Premiums	(\$14,625,000)	(\$14,625,000)	(\$14,625,000)
Totals		<u>(\$14,565,693)</u>	<u>(\$14,298,646)</u>

### **Note C. Stewardship, Compliance, and Accountability**

#### **Budgetary Data**

The Board of Trustees adopts an "appropriated budget" for the General Fund, Debt Service Fund and the Food Service Fund (which is included in the Special Revenue Funds). The District is required to present the adopted and final amended budgeted revenues and expenditures for each of these funds. The District compares the final amended budget to actual revenues and expenditures. The General Fund Budget report appears in Exhibit G-1 and the other two reports are in Exhibit J-2 and J-3.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the governmental fund financial statements:

1. Prior to August 20, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget. At least ten days' public notice of the meeting must be given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

Once a budget is approved, it can only be amended at the function and fund level by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings. Each amendment must have Board approval. As required by law, such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board, and are not made after fiscal year-end. Because the District has a policy of careful budgetary control, several amendments were necessary during the year. However, none of these were significant. Each budget is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year-end.

A reconciliation of fund balances for both appropriated budget and nonappropriated budget special revenue funds is as follows:

<u>August 31, 2017 Fund Balance</u>	
Appropriated Budget Funds - Food Service	\$0
Nonappropriated Budget Funds-Campus Activity Funds	110,132
Nonappropriated Budget Funds-After School Care	80,369
Nonappropriated Budget Funds-Scholarships	7,971
All Special Revenue Funds	<u>\$198,472</u>

#### **Note D. Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments**

##### District Policies and Legal and Contractual Provisions Governing Deposits and Investments:

The **Public Funds Investment Act** (Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports, and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires the District to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, (9) and bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit. Statutes authorize the District to invest in (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, certain U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas and its agencies; (2) guaranteed or secured certificates of deposit issued by state and national banks domiciled in Texas, (3) obligations of states, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state having been rated as to investment quality not less than "A"; (4) no load money market funds with a weighted average maturity of 90 days or less; (5) fully collateralized repurchase agreements; (6) commercial paper having a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance and is not rated less than A-1 or P-1 by two nationally credit rating agencies or one nationally recognized credit agency and is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit; (7) secured corporate bonds rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent; (8) public funds investment pools; and (9) guaranteed investment contracts for bond proceeds investment only, with a defined termination date and secured by U.S. Government direct or agency obligations approved by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act in an amount equal to the bond proceeds. The Act also requires the District to have independent auditors perform test procedures related to investment practices as provided by the Act. Van Alstyne Independent School District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies.

Additional policies and contractual provisions governing investments for Van Alstyne Independent School District are specified below:

*Credit Risk* – To limit the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations, the District limits investments in certificates of deposits, no-load money market accounts, and public investment pools. As of August 31, 2017, the District's investments in public funds investment pools were rated AAAM by Standard & Poor's.

*Custodial Credit Risk for Deposits* – State law requires the District to contract with financial institutions in which funds will be deposited to secure those deposits with insurance or pledged securities with a fair value equaling or exceeding the amount on deposit at the end of each business day. The pledged securities must be in the name of the



District and held by the entity or its agent. Since the District complies with this law, it has no custodial risk for deposits

*Custodial Credit Risk for Investments* – To limit the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty to a transaction, the District will not be able to recover the value of investment or collateral securities that are in possession of an outside party the District requires counterparties to register the securities in the name of the District and hand them over to the District or its designated agent. This includes securities lending transactions. All of the securities are in the District's name and held by the District or its agent.

*Concentration of Credit Risk* – To limit the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of the District's investment in a single issuer, the District diversifies in terms of investment instruments, maturity scheduling, and financial institutions to reduce the risk of loss resulting from over concentration of assets in a specific class of investments, specific maturity, or specific issuer.

*Interest Rate Risk* – To limit the risk of changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of investments, the District requires invested instruments maturities do not exceed one year from the time of purchase except when a longer maturity may be specifically authorized by the Board for a given investment provided legal limits are not exceeded

*Foreign Currency Risk* – The District limits the risk that changes in exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment or a deposit by not investing in foreign currency.

#### Fair Value Measurements:

The District categorizes its fair value measurements with the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs. Investments that are measured at fair value using the net asset value per share (or its equivalent) as a practical expedient are not classified in the fair value hierarchy below.

In instances where inputs used to measure fair value fall into different levels in the below hierarchy, fair value measurements in their entirety are categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the valuation. The District's assessment of the significance of particular inputs to these fair value measurements requires judgement and considers factors specific to each asset.

Van Alstyne Independent School District has the following recurring fair value measurements as of August 31, 2017:

Cash & Cash Equivalents of \$19,253,059 are valued using quoted market prices (Level 1 inputs)

The District has no investments measured at the Net Asset Value (NAV) per Share or its equivalent.

#### Deposit Collateral Information

At August 31, 2017, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest bearing savings accounts) was \$19,253,059. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2017 and during the year ended August 31, 2017 were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged deposit collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name, or by letters of credit.

In addition, the following is disclosed regarding coverage of combined balances on the date of highest deposit:

a. Depository: Independent Bank, Van Alstyne, Texas

b. The highest combined balance of cash, savings, and time deposits accounts amounted to \$21,730,231 and occurred during the month of July 2017.

c. The market value of securities pledged as of the date of the highest combined balance on deposit was \$22,228,240.

d. Total amount of FDIC coverage at the time of the highest combined balance was \$500,000.

**Note E. Property Taxes**

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 31 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available when collected.

The assessed value of the tax roll on January 1, 2016, upon which the tax levy for the 2017 fiscal year was based, was \$555,172,620. The tax rates assessed for the year ended August 31, 2017 to finance general fund operations and the payment of principal & interest on general obligation bonds were \$ 1.12 and \$ 0.40 per \$ 100 valuation, respectively, for a total of \$ 1.52 per \$ 100 valuation. Current year (including prior year delinquent) tax collections for the year ended August 31, 2017 were 99.37% of the tax levy.

**Note F. Delinquent Taxes Receivable**

Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy. Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General and Debt Service Funds are based on historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

**Note G. Disaggregation of Receivables and Payables**

Receivables at August 31, 2017, were as follows:

	<u>Property Taxes</u>	<u>Due from Other Governments</u>	<u>Due from Other Funds</u>	<u>Other</u>	<u>Total Receivables</u>
Governmental Activities:					
General Fund	\$267,644	\$882,136	\$11,219	\$0	\$1,160,999
Debt Service Fund	93,778	16,234	0	0	110,012
Nonmajor Governmental Funds	0	87,240	0	0	87,240
Total Governmental Activities	<u>\$361,422</u>	<u>\$985,610</u>	<u>\$11,219</u>	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$1,358,251</u>
Amounts not scheduled for collection during the subsequent year	<u>\$5,647</u>	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$5,647</u>

Payables at August 31, 2017, were as follows:

	<u>Accounts</u>	<u>Salaries &amp; Benefits</u>	<u>Due to Other Funds</u>	<u>Due to Other Governments</u>	<u>Other</u>	<u>Total Payables</u>
Governmental Activities:						
General Fund	\$76,568	\$433,327	\$36,968	\$0	\$9,164	\$556,027
Debt Service Fund	0	0	11,219	9,258	0	20,477
Nonmajor Governmental Funds	0	23,581	0	0	1,185	24,766
Total Governmental Activities	<u>\$76,568</u>	<u>\$456,908</u>	<u>\$48,187</u>	<u>\$9,258</u>	<u>\$10,349</u>	<u>\$601,270</u>
Amounts not scheduled for collection during the subsequent year	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0

#### **Note H. Capital Asset Activity**

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2017 was as follows:

	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Retirements</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>
Land	\$818,786	\$0	\$0	\$818,786
Buildings & Improvements	50,559,382	144,506	0	50,703,888
Equipment	2,138,056	221,147	0	2,359,203
Vehicles	1,121,778	228,837		1,350,615
Construction in Progress	0	964,199	0	964,199
Totals at Historical Cost	<u>54,638,002</u>	<u>1,558,689</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>56,196,691</u>
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings & Improvements	(15,914,766)	(1,252,089)	0	(17,166,855)
Equipment	(1,600,409)	(98,449)	0	(1,698,858)
Vehicles	(535,425)	(120,695)	0	(656,120)
Total accumulated depreciation	<u>(18,050,600)</u>	<u>(1,471,233)</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>(19,521,833)</u>
Capital Assets, Net	<u>\$36,587,402</u>	<u>\$87,456</u>	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$36,674,858</u>

Depreciation expense for the current year was charged to governmental functions as follows:

11 Instruction	\$756,302
12 Instructional Resources & Media Services	13,505
13 Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	13,505
23 School Leadership	67,527
31 Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services	27,011
33 Health Services	13,505
34 Student (Pupil) Transportation	134,200
35 Food Services	54,022
36 Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	121,548
41 General Administration	67,527
51 Plant Maintenance & Operations	162,065
53 Data Processing Services	40,516
Total Depreciation Expense	<u>\$1,471,233</u>

**Note I. Changes in Long-Term Liabilities**

Long-term liability activity for the year ended August 31, 2017, was as follows:

	<u>Beginning</u> <u>Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Ending</u> <u>Balance</u>	<u>Amounts Due</u> <u>within One</u> <u>Year</u>
Governmental Activities:					
General Obligation Bonds	\$35,685,000	\$14,285,000	(\$7,595,000)	\$42,375,000	\$1,660,000
Accumulated Accretion on CABs	16,965	1,565	(18,530)	0	
Unamortized Bond Premiums	1,518,376	340,000	(146,926)	1,711,450	
Total Bonds Payable, Government-Wide	\$37,220,341	\$14,626,565	(\$7,760,456)	\$44,086,450	
Loans	0	0	0	0	0
Total Governmental Activities	\$37,220,341	\$14,626,565	(\$7,760,456)	\$44,086,450	\$1,660,000

**Note J. Bonds Payable & Debt Service Requirements**

The District has entered into a continuing disclosure undertaking to provide annual reports and material event notices to the State Information Depository of Texas (SID), which is the Municipal Advisory Council. This information is required under SEC Rule 15c2-12 to enable investors to analyze the financial condition and operations of the District.

There are a number of limitations and restrictions contained in the general obligation bond indenture. Management has indicated that the District is in compliance with all significant limitations and restrictions at August 31, 2017.

In the governmental fund financial statements, current requirements for principal and interest expenditures are accounted for in the Debt Service Fund. The proceeds from the sale of bonds are shown in the governmental fund financial statements as Other Resources and principal payments are shown as expenditures.

A summary of changes in general obligation bonds for the year ended August 31, 2017 is as follows:

<u>Description</u>	<u>Interest Rates Payable</u>	<u>Amounts of Original Issue</u>	<u>Interest Current Year</u>	<u>Beginning Amounts Outstanding 9/01/16</u>	<u>Issued</u>	<u>Retired</u>	<u>Ending Amounts Outstanding 8/31/17</u>
Unlimited Tax Bldg Bonds-Series 2007	4.00-4.50%	\$9,090,000	\$61,881	\$1,460,000	\$0	(\$330,000)	\$1,130,000
Unlimited Tax Bldg Bonds-Series 2008	4.00-5.50%	8,900,000	315,275	7,640,000	0	(205,000)	7,435,000
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2011	2.00-3.00%	6,745,000	206,100	6,145,000	0	(230,000)	5,915,000
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2012	1.00-3.20%	4,065,000	123,950	3,975,000	0	(150,000)	3,825,000
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2012A	1.00-3.00%	3,955,000	91,210	3,805,000	0	0	3,805,000
Capital Appreciation Bonds-Series 2012A	0.70-0.90%	145,000	140,000	35,000	0	(35,000)	0
Unlimited Tax Bldg Bonds-Series 2015	2.00-4.00%	6,480,000	225,138	6,385,000	0	(100,000)	6,285,000
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2016	2.00-4.00%	6,295,000	227,000	6,240,000	0	0	6,240,000
Unlimited Tax Bldg Bonds-Series 2017	2.00-4.00%	14,285,000	58,283	0	14,285,000	0	14,285,000
Total General Obligation Bonds			<u>\$1,448,837</u>	<u>\$35,685,000</u>	<u>\$14,285,000</u>	<u>(\$1,050,000)</u>	<u>\$48,920,000</u>
Accumulated Accretion on CABs				16,965	1,565	(18,530)	0
Unamortized Bond Premiums				<u>1,518,376</u>	<u>340,000</u>	<u>(146,926)</u>	<u>1,711,450</u>
<b>Total Bonds Payable, Government-Wide Financials</b>				<b><u>\$37,220,341</u></b>	<b><u>\$14,626,565</u></b>	<b><u>(\$1,215,456)</u></b>	<b><u>\$50,631,450</u></b>

Debt service requirements for bonds are as follows:

<u>Year Ending August 31,</u>	<u>General Obligation Bonds</u>		<u>Total Requirements</u>
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	
2018	\$1,660,000	\$1,691,041	\$3,351,041
2019	1,370,000	1,643,191	3,013,191
2020	1,530,000	1,600,516	3,130,516
2021	1,700,000	1,554,436	3,254,436
2022	1,750,000	1,503,154	3,253,154
2023-2027	9,655,000	6,610,469	16,265,469
2028-2032	11,515,000	4,744,895	16,259,895
2033-2037	12,420,000	2,577,174	14,997,174
2038-Maturity	7,320,000	529,963	7,849,963
Total General Obligation Bonds	<u>\$48,920,000</u>	<u>\$22,454,839</u>	<u>\$71,374,839</u>

**Note K. Long Term Notes and Capital Leases Payable****Long-Term Notes:**

There were no loans outstanding during the year ended August 31, 2017.

**Capital Leases:**

There are no capital leases outstanding during the year ended August 31, 2017.

**Note L. Accumulated Unpaid Vacation and Sick Leave Benefits**

District employees are entitled to certain compensated absences based upon their length of employment. Sick leave accrues at various rates established by the State of Texas and adopted by the Board of Trustees. Sick leave does not vest, but accumulates and is recorded as an expenditure as it is used and paid.

A summary of changes in the accumulated sick leave and vacation leave liability follows:

	<u>Sick Leave</u>	<u>Vacation Leave</u>
Balance, September 1, 2016	\$0	\$0
Additions - New Entrants and Salary Increments	0	0
Deductions - Payments to Participants	0	0
Balance, August 31, 2017	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$0</u>

**Note M. Defined Benefit Pension Plan (TRS)**

**Plan Description.** Van Alstyne Independent School District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

**Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position.** Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at [http://www.trs.state.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr\\_2016.pdf](http://www.trs.state.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr_2016.pdf); by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

**Benefits Provided.** TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan Description above.

**Contributions.** Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 thru 2017. The 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

	<u><b>Contribution Rates</b></u>	
	<u><b>2016</b></u>	<u><b>2017</b></u>
Member	7.2%	7.2%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
Van Alstyne ISD FY2017 Employer Contributions		\$ 259,143
Van Alstyne ISD FY2017 Member Contributions		\$ 623,441
Van Alstyne ISD FY2016 NECE On-Behalf Contributions		\$ 512,213

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers including public schools are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding source or a privately sponsored source.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System, the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees, and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

**Actuarial Assumptions.** The total pension liability in the August 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2016
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8.00%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8.00%
Inflation	2.5%
Salary Increases Including Inflation	3.5% to 9.5%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.5%
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are primarily based on a study of actual experience for the four-year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

**Discount Rate.** The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2016 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Real Return Geometric Basis	Long-Term Expected Portfolio Real Rate of Return*
<b>Global Equity</b>			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
<b>Stable Value</b>			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Hedge Funds (Stable Value)	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
<b>Real Return</b>			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
<b>Risk Parity</b>			
Risk Parity	<u>5%</u>	<u>6.7%</u>	<u>0.3%</u>
Inflation Expectations			2.2%
Alpha			1.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>100%</b>		<b>8.7%</b>

\* The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.



**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis.** The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the 2016 Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (7.0%)	Discount Rate (8.0%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (9.0%)
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability:	\$3,534,045	\$2,283,472	\$1,222,732

**Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions.** At August 31, 2017, Van Alstyne Independent School District reported a liability of \$2,283,472 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to Van Alstyne Independent School District. The amount recognized by Van Alstyne Independent School District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with Van Alstyne Independent School District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 2,283,472
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	<u>4,935,746</u>
Total	<u>\$ 7,219,218</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2016 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the employer's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2015 thru August 31, 2016.

At August 31, 2016, the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.000060427668% which was a decrease of 0.000001714332% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2015.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** – There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2017, Van Alstyne Independent School District recognized pension expense of \$512,213 and revenue of \$512,213 for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2017, Van Alstyne Independent School District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual actuarial experience	\$ 35,804	\$ 68,183
Changes in actuarial assumptions	69,596	63,295
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings, net	193,360	0
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	587,002	159
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	259,143	0
Total	\$1,144,905	\$131,637

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year ended August 31:	Pension Expense Amount
2018	\$ 135,908
2019	135,908
2020	259,242
2021	126,429
2022	86,614
Thereafter	<u>10,025</u>
Total	\$754,126

**Note N. School District Retiree Health Plan (TRS-Care)**

**Plan Description** – Van Alstyne Independent School District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care provides a health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees the authority to establish and amend basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The Teacher Retirement System of Texas issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by visiting the TRS website at [www.trs.texas.gov/Pages/Homepage.aspx](http://www.trs.texas.gov/Pages/Homepage.aspx) under the TRS Publications heading, by calling the TRS Communications Department at 1-800-223-8778, or by writing to the Communications Department of TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701.

**Funding Policy** – Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public-school contributions, respectfully. Funding for free basic coverage is provided by the program based upon public school district payroll. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public-school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. Funding for optional coverage is provided by those participants selecting optional coverage. Contribution rates and amounts are shown in the table below for fiscal years 2017-2015.

Contribution Rates and Contribution Amounts

Year	Member Contributions		State Contributions		District Contributions	
	Rate	Amount	Rate	Amount	Rate	Amount
2017	0.65%	\$52,628	1.000%	\$80,966	0.55%	\$44,531
2016	0.65%	\$48,469	1.000%	\$74,568	0.55%	\$41,012
2015	0.65%	\$46,494	1.000%	\$71,529	0.55%	\$39,341

**Note O. Medicare Part D (TRS-Care)**

**Federal Government Retiree Drug Subsidy** – The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare Part D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. The allocation of these on-behalf payments is based on the ratio of a reporting entity's covered payroll to the entire payroll reported by all reporting entities. TRS based this allocation percentage on the completed report submissions by reporting entities for the month of May. State Contributions for Medicare Part D made on behalf of Van Alstyne Independent School District's employees were \$38,039, \$29,218, and \$29,542, respectively for fiscal years ended August 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015.

**Note P. Due from Other Governments**

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of August 31, 2017, are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Due from State Agencies.

<u>Fund</u>	<u>State Entitlements</u>	<u>Federal Grants</u>	<u>Other Governments</u>	<u>Totals</u>
General Fund	\$881,079	\$0	\$1,057	\$882,136
Debt Service Funds	15,856	0	378	16,234
Special Revenue Funds	0	87,240	0	87,240
Totals	\$896,935	\$87,240	\$1,435	\$985,610

**Note Q. Due to Other Governments**

As of August 31, 2017, the District had \$9,258 due to Texas Education Agency for 2016-2017 state existing debt allotment revenue settle-up overpaid. The Texas Education Agency will deduct this amount from 2017-2018 state revenue.

**Note R. Unearned Revenue & Unavailable Revenue**

Unearned revenue is that portion of the net revenue receivable which is expected to be collected within the first 60 days following the fiscal year end. Unavailable revenue is that portion of the net revenue receivable which is not expected to be collected within the first 60 days following the fiscal year end.

Unearned revenue and Unavailable revenue at August 31, 2017 consisted of the following:

	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Special Revenue Fund</u>	<u>Debt Service Fund</u>	<u>Totals</u>
Unearned Revenue:				
Property Tax Revenue	\$21,677	\$0	\$7,744	\$29,421
Total Unearned Revenue	\$21,677	\$0	\$7,744	\$29,421
Unavailable Revenue:				
Property Tax Revenue	\$241,785	\$0	\$84,569	\$326,354
Total Unavailable Revenue	\$241,785	\$0	\$84,569	\$326,354

**Note S. Commitments and Contingencies**

*Litigation* – The District may be subjected to loss contingencies arising principally in the normal course of operations. In the opinion of the administration, the outcome of any lawsuits will not have a material adverse effect on the accompanying financial statements and accordingly no provision for losses has been recorded.

*Grant Programs* – The District participates in numerous state and federal grant programs, which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable at August 31, 2017 may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities related to compliance with rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying financial statements for such contingencies.

*Construction* – The District has total construction in progress of \$964,199 as of August 31, 2017 for facilities construction. The total cost of the construction project is projected to be \$14,500,000. There is no retainage payable as of August 31, 2017, since the project is just getting underway.

**Note T. Revenue from Local and Intermediate Sources**

During the current year, revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

		<u>Special Revenue</u>	<u>Debt Service</u>	<u>Capital Projects</u>	
	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Funds</u>	<u>Fund</u>	<u>Fund</u>	<u>Totals</u>
Property Taxes	\$6,178,480	\$0	\$2,206,596	\$0	\$8,385,076
Penalties, Interest, & Other Tax					
Related Income	43,210	0	16,109	0	59,319
Investment Income	43,127	16	5,014	5,764	53,921
Services to Other LEAs	13,000	0	0	0	13,000
Tuition	18,555	88,318	0	0	106,873
Gifts & Bequests	15,775	0	0	0	15,775
Food Service Sales	0	225,071	0	0	225,071
Athletics	57,690	0	0	0	57,690
Co-Curricular	115,590	323,129	0	0	438,719
Other	77,252	0	0	0	77,252
Totals	\$6,562,679	\$636,534	\$2,227,719	\$5,764	\$9,432,696

**Note U. Interfund Balances and Transfers In & Out**

Interfund balances at August 31, 2017, consisted of the following amounts:

**Due to General Fund from:**

Debt Service Fund	<u>\$11,219</u>
Total Due to General Fund from Other Funds	<u>\$11,219</u>

**Due to Internal Service Fund from:**

General Fund	<u>\$36,698</u>
Total Due to Internal Service Fund from Other Funds	<u>\$36,698</u>

Interfund transfers for the year ended August 31, 2017, consisted of the following individual amounts:

**Transfers to Debt Service Fund from:**

General Fund	<u>\$140,000</u>
Total Transferred to Debt Service Fund from Other Funds	<u>\$140,000</u>

**Transfers to Nonmajor Governmental Funds from:**

General Fund	<u>\$7,545</u>
Total Transferred to Nonmajor Funds from Other Funds	<u>\$7,545</u>

**Transfers to General Fund from:**

Nonmajor Funds-After School Care	<u>\$49,467</u>
Total Transferred to General Fund from Other Funds	<u>\$49,467</u>

**Note V. Joint Ventures – Shared Service Arrangements**

The District participates in shared services arrangements for Special Education Services with other school districts. The District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, nor does the district have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to Van Alstyne Independent School District. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the shared services arrangement.

**Note W. Subsequent Events**

In reviewing its financial statements, management has evaluated events subsequent to the balance sheet date through November 24, 2017, which is the date the financial statements were available to be issued.

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

## REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	Original	Final		
REVENUES:				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 6,369,600	\$ 6,661,680	\$ 6,562,679	\$ (99,001)
5800 State Program Revenues	6,159,058	6,663,931	6,857,110	193,179
5900 Federal Program Revenues	45,000	68,500	68,161	(339)
5020 Total Revenues	12,573,658	13,394,112	13,487,950	93,838
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	6,555,904	7,053,921	7,050,435	3,486
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	147,097	140,724	135,352	5,372
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	159,256	150,456	144,765	5,691
0023 School Leadership	713,828	677,628	674,905	2,723
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	229,638	218,438	212,699	5,739
0033 Health Services	111,070	111,070	109,624	1,446
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	253,477	280,811	256,493	24,318
0036 Extracurricular Activities	623,004	882,658	777,881	104,777
0041 General Administration	622,741	609,241	605,667	3,574
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,457,162	1,458,272	1,456,570	1,702
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	20,000	39,308	34,271	5,037
0053 Data Processing Services	306,059	327,218	325,215	2,003
Capital Outlay:				
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	810,000	924,886	144,506	780,380
Intergovernmental:				
0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	274,422	274,422	262,762	11,660
0099 Other Intergovernmental Charges	150,000	150,000	143,385	6,615
6030 Total Expenditures	12,433,658	13,299,053	12,334,530	964,523
1100 Excess of Revenues Over Expenditures	140,000	95,059	1,153,420	1,058,361
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7915 Transfers In	-	49,467	49,467	-
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	(140,000)	(148,000)	(147,545)	455
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(140,000)	(98,533)	(98,078)	455
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	-	(3,475)	1,055,342	1,058,817
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	4,801,835	4,801,835	4,801,835	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 4,801,835	\$ 4,798,360	\$ 5,857,177	\$ 1,058,817



## VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

EXHIBIT G-2

SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	FY 2017 Plan Year 2016	FY 2016 Plan Year 2015	FY 2015 Plan Year 2014
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.000060428%	0.000062142%	0.00003413%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 2,283,472	\$ 2,196,637	\$ 911,660
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District	4,935,746	4,712,011	3,997,177
Total	<u>\$ 7,219,218</u>	<u>\$ 6,908,648</u>	<u>\$ 4,908,837</u>
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 7,456,811	\$ 7,152,922	\$ 6,782,441
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered-Employee Payroll	30.62%	30.71%	13.44%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	76.23%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only three years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR FISCAL YEAR 2017

EXHIBIT G-3

	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 259,143	\$ 234,851	\$ 224,993
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	259,143	234,851	224,993
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	<u>\$ -0-</u>	<u>\$ -0-</u>	<u>\$ -0-</u>
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 8,096,630	\$ 7,456,811	\$ 7,152,922
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered-Employee Payroll	3.20%	3.15%	3.15%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 for the respective fiscal years.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, the years of data presented this reporting period are those for which data is available. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

*Changes of benefit terms.*

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

*Changes of assumptions.*

There were no changes in the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

## COMBINING STATEMENTS

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes		211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	255 ESEA II, A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition
<b>ASSETS</b>					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ (57,215)	\$ 8,397	\$ (12,845)	\$ (811)
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	65,464	6,776	14,189	811
1000	Total Assets	<u>\$ 8,249</u>	<u>\$ 15,173</u>	<u>\$ 1,344</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	\$ 7,502	\$ 14,858	\$ 1,221	\$ -
2200	Accrued Expenditures	747	315	123	-
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>8,249</u>	<u>15,173</u>	<u>1,344</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>					
Restricted Fund Balance:					
3490	Other Restricted Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
Committed Fund Balance:					
3545	Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 8,249</u>	<u>\$ 15,173</u>	<u>\$ 1,344</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

410 Instructional Materials Allotment	481 High School Campus Activity	482 Middle School Campus Activity	484 Elementary Campus Activity	497 After School Care	498 Local Scholarship Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ 59,891	\$ 28,844	\$ 21,397	\$ 80,369	\$ 7,971	\$ 135,998
-	-	-	-	-	-	87,240
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 59,891</u>	<u>\$ 28,844</u>	<u>\$ 21,397</u>	<u>\$ 80,369</u>	<u>\$ 7,971</u>	<u>\$ 223,238</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 23,581
-	-	-	-	-	-	1,185
<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>24,766</u>
-	-	-	-	-	7,971	7,971
-	59,891	28,844	21,397	80,369	-	190,501
<u>-</u>	<u>59,891</u>	<u>28,844</u>	<u>21,397</u>	<u>80,369</u>	<u>7,971</u>	<u>198,472</u>
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 59,891</u>	<u>\$ 28,844</u>	<u>\$ 21,397</u>	<u>\$ 80,369</u>	<u>\$ 7,971</u>	<u>\$ 223,238</u>

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	255 ESEA II, A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ 225,071	\$ -	\$ -
5800 State Program Revenues	-	2,750	-	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	111,020	255,902	22,533	1,661
5020 Total Revenues	111,020	483,723	22,533	1,661
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	111,020	-	22,533	1,661
0035 Food Services	-	491,268	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0061 Community Services	-	-	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	111,020	491,268	22,533	1,661
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	(7,545)	-	-
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	-	7,545	-	-
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	-	-	-	-
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	-	7,545	-	-
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -



410 Instructional Materials Allotment	481 High School Campus Activity	482 Middle School Campus Activity	484 Elementary Campus Activity	497 After School Care	498 Local Scholarship Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ 149,841	\$ 104,003	\$ 69,285	\$ 88,318	\$ 16	\$ 636,534
57,159	-	-	-	-	-	59,909
-	-	-	-	-	-	391,116
57,159	149,841	104,003	69,285	88,318	16	1,087,559
57,159	-	-	-	-	-	192,373
-	-	-	-	-	-	491,268
-	173,254	114,457	65,342	-	-	353,053
-	-	-	-	48,682	-	48,682
57,159	173,254	114,457	65,342	48,682	-	1,085,376
-	(23,413)	(10,454)	3,943	39,636	16	2,183
-	-	-	-	-	-	7,545
-	-	-	-	(49,467)	-	(49,467)
-	-	-	-	(49,467)	-	(41,922)
-	(23,413)	(10,454)	3,943	(9,831)	16	(39,739)
-	83,304	39,298	17,454	90,200	7,955	238,211
\$ -	\$ 59,891	\$ 28,844	\$ 21,397	\$ 80,369	\$ 7,971	\$ 198,472

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

## REQUIRED TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY SCHEDULES

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Last 10 Years Ended August 31	(1)	(2)	(3)
	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2008 and prior years	\$ 1.040000	\$ 0.310000	\$ 352,053,519
2009	1.120000	0.400000	377,356,139
2010	1.120000	0.400000	400,533,998
2011	1.120000	0.400000	410,468,535
2012	1.120000	0.400000	407,511,574
2013	1.120000	0.400000	405,677,637
2014	1.120000	0.400000	458,603,711
2015	1.120000	0.400000	496,876,241
2016	1.120000	0.400000	517,257,359
2017 (School year under audit)	1.120000	0.400000	555,172,620
1000 TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 9/1/2016	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 8/31/2017
\$ 39,843	\$ -	\$ 59	\$ 18	\$ -	\$ 39,766
12,580	-	83	30	-	12,467
20,780	-	145	52	-	20,583
22,389	-	362	129	-	21,898
19,252	-	1,728	617	-	16,907
21,040	-	1,384	494	-	19,162
34,290	-	4,582	1,636	(118)	27,954
45,249	-	11,695	4,176	(151)	29,227
101,444	-	37,662	13,451	(8,724)	41,607
-	8,438,624	6,120,780	2,185,993	-	131,851
<u>\$ 316,867</u>	<u>\$ 8,438,624</u>	<u>\$ 6,178,480</u>	<u>\$ 2,206,596</u>	<u>\$ (8,993)</u>	<u>\$ 361,422</u>

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	Original	Final		
REVENUES:				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 267,000	\$ 256,399	\$ 225,071	\$ (31,328)
5800 State Program Revenues	19,649	19,750	2,750	(17,000)
5900 Federal Program Revenues	250,600	258,673	255,902	(2,771)
5020 Total Revenues	537,249	534,822	483,723	(51,099)
EXPENDITURES:				
0035 Food Services	537,249	542,822	491,268	51,554
6030 Total Expenditures	537,249	542,822	491,268	51,554
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	(8,000)	(7,545)	455
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7915 Transfers In	-	8,000	7,545	(455)
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - DEBT SERVICE FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 2,224,933	\$ 2,335,933	\$ 2,227,719	\$ (108,214)
5800	State Program Revenues	75,621	86,929	84,034	(2,895)
5020	Total Revenues	2,300,554	2,422,862	2,311,753	(111,109)
EXPENDITURES:					
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long Term Debt	1,050,000	1,168,208	1,050,000	118,208
0072	Interest on Long Term Debt	1,390,554	1,449,837	1,448,837	1,000
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	129,210	129,210	-
6030	Total Expenditures	2,440,554	2,747,255	2,628,047	119,208
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(140,000)	(324,393)	(316,294)	8,099
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):					
7911	Capital Related Debt Issued (Regular Bonds)	-	59,393	59,392	(1)
7915	Transfers In	140,000	140,000	140,000	-
7916	Premium or Discount on Issuance of Bonds	-	125,000	125,000	-
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	140,000	324,393	324,392	(1)
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	8,098	8,098
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	22,211	22,211	22,211	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 22,211	\$ 22,211	\$ 30,309	\$ 8,098

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY



## COMPLIANCE & INTERNAL CONTROL SECTION

***Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.***  
Post Office Box 8158  
Greenville, Texas 75404

**Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an  
Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance With *Government Auditing Standards***

**Independent Auditor's Report**

Van Alstyne Independent School District  
549 Miller Lane  
Van Alstyne, Texas 75495

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Van Alstyne Independent School District, as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated November 24, 2017.

**Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered Van Alstyne Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of Van Alstyne Independent School District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of Van Alstyne Independent School District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

**Compliance and Other Matters**

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether Van Alstyne Independent School District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

**Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

*/s/ Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.*

---

Morgan, Davis, & Company, P.C.  
Greenville, Texas

November 24, 2017

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**Summary of Auditor's Results:**

The type of report we issued on whether the financial statements of Van Alstyne Independent School District were prepared in accordance with GAAP as an unmodified opinion.

With respect to internal control over financial reporting, we identified no material weaknesses and we reported no significant deficiencies.

We noted no noncompliance material to the financial statements,

**Financial Statements Findings:**

There are no findings related to financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF STATUS OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

(Prepared by the District's Administration)

There were no prior audit findings which required corrective action.

VAN ALSTYNE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

(Prepared by the District's Administration)

There were no corrective actions necessary for the year ended August 31, 2017.

## SCHOOLS FIRST QUESTIONNAIRE

Van Alstyne Independent School District

Fiscal Year 2017

---

SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?	No
SF4	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report on the financial statements as a whole?	Yes
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other government agencies?	Yes
SF8	Did the school district not receive an adjusted repayment schedule for more than one fiscal year for an over allocation of Foundation School Program (FSP) funds as a result of a financial hardship?	Yes
SF10	Total accumulated accretion on CABs included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end.	0
SF11	Net Pension Assets (1920) at fiscal year-end.	0
SF12	Net Pension Liabilities (2540) at fiscal year-end.	2,283,472
SF13	Pension Expense (6147) at fiscal year-end.	

(this page intentionally left blank)





Financial Advisory Services

Provided By:

**SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.**